

Whangarei District Council Meeting

Agenda

Date: Thursday, 14 December, 2017

Time: 10:30 am

Location: Council Chamber
Forum North, Rust Avenue
Whangarei

Elected Members: Her Worship the Mayor Sheryl Mai
(Chairperson)
Cr Stu Bell
Cr Crichton Christie
Cr Vince Cocurullo
Cr Tricia Cutforth
Cr Shelley Deeming
Cr Sue Glen
Cr Phil Halse
Cr Cherry Hermon
Cr Greg Innes
Cr Greg Martin
Cr Sharon Morgan
Cr Anna Murphy

For any queries regarding this meeting please contact
the Whangarei District Council on (09) 430-4200.

1. Karakia/Prayer	
2. Declarations of Interest	
3. Apologies	
4. Statutory Declaration by Member	1
5. Public Forum	3
6. Confirmation of Minutes of Previous Meeting of the Whangarei District Council	
6.1 Minutes Whangarei District Council 30 November 2017	5
7. Decision Reports	
7.1 Long Term Plan 2018 - 2028 - Audit NZ Review	11
7.2 Long-Term Plan 2018-2028 Key Dates and Consultation Activities	199
7.3 Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017	203
7.4 Animals Bylaw	249
7.5 Whangarei Art Museum Trust - Review of Exemption	277
8. Public Excluded Business	
8.1 Closed Minutes Whangarei District Council 30 November 2017	
9. Closure of Meeting	

4. Statutory Declaration by Member

Meeting: Whangarei District Council
Date of meeting: 14 December 2017
Reporting officer: R Forlong (Chief Executive)

1 Purpose

To allow the in-coming Councillor, elected at the by-election of the Denby Ward, to make their statutory declaration.

2 Discussion

Clause 14(1)(a) of Schedule 7 of the Local Government Act 2002 states that “a person may not act as a member of a local authority until that person has, at a meeting of the local authority following the election of that person, made an oral declaration”.

3. Procedure

Statutory Declaration

The in-coming Councillor will be invited to make an oral declaration and sign a written declaration, which will be attested by the Mayor.

Maiden Speech

The new member will then be invited to give a short maiden speech (up to 5 minutes duration).

5 Public Forum

Meeting: Council
Date of meeting: 30 November 2017
Reporting officer: Carolyne Brindle (Senior Democracy Adviser)

1 Purpose

To afford members of the Community an opportunity to speak to Council and to report on matters raised at previous public forums when appropriate.

2 Summary

Public Forum

Standing Orders allow for a period of up to 30 minutes to be set aside for a public forum at the commencement of each monthly council meeting.

The time allowed for each speaker is 5 minutes.

Members of the public who wish to participate should send a written application setting out the subject matter and the names of the speakers to the Chief Executive at least 2 working days before the day of the meeting.

Speakers

At the time of the agenda closure no applications to speak had been received.

Item 6.1**Whangarei District Council Meeting Minutes**

Date: Thursday, 30 November, 2017
Time: 10:30 a.m.
Location: Council Chamber
Forum North, Rust Avenue
Whangarei

In Attendance	Her Worship the Mayor Sheryl Mai (Chairperson) Cr Stu Bell Cr Crichton Christie Cr Vince Cocurullo Cr Tricia Cutforth Cr Shelley Deeming Cr Sue Glen Cr Phil Halse Cr Cherry Hermon Cr Greg Innes Cr Sharon Morgan Cr Anna Murphy
Not in Attendance	Cr Greg Martin

In attendance:

Chief Executive (Rob Forlong), General Manager Corporate (Alan Adcock), General Manager Planning and Development (Alison Geddes), General Manager Strategy and Democracy (Jill McPherson), Manager District Development (Adam Worley), Manager Community Development (Jonny Gritt), Manager Democracy and Assurance (Jason Marris), Manager Finance (Rich Kerr), Commercial Portfolio Manager (Mike Hibbert), Legal Adviser (Kathryn Candy), Executive Assistance (Judi Crocombe), Team Leader Democracy (Nicolene Pestana) and Senior Democracy Adviser (C Brindle)

1. Karakia/Prayer

Cr Glen opened the meeting with a karakia/prayer

2. Declarations of Interest

3. Apologies

Cr Cherry Hermon (early departure) and Cr Greg Martin (absent)

Moved By Cr Greg Innes

Seconded By Cr Anna Murphy

That the apologies be sustained.

Carried

4. Public Forum

David Seymour - Mobility/disability Parking bylaw

5. Confirmation of Minutes of Previous Meeting of the Whangarei District Council

5.1 Open Minutes Whangarei District Council 26 October 2017

Moved By Cr Sue Glen

Seconded By Cr Tricia Cutforth

That the minutes of the Whangarei District Council meeting held on Thursday 26 October 2017, including the confidential section, having been circulated, be taken as read and now confirmed and adopted as a true and correct record of proceedings of that meeting.

Carried

6. Decision Reports

6.1 Decision making over the 2017 2018 Christmas recess

Moved By Cr Phil Halse

Seconded By Cr Cherry Hermon

That Council;

- a) delegates the power to make urgent decisions on behalf of the Council or its committees between the last scheduled meetings in December 2017 and the first meeting of Council or relevant committee in 2018 (the Christmas recess period) to:
 - any two of either the Mayor or Deputy Mayor, and the Chairperson of either the Community Development, Infrastructure, Planning and Development or Finance Committees.

2. in the event the Mayor and Deputy Mayor are both absent from Council at the same time, delegates the power to make urgent decisions on behalf of Council or its committees over the 2017/2018 Christmas recess period to:
 - any two Chairpersons of either the Community Development, Infrastructure, Planning and Development or Finance Committees.
3. notes that if it is considered necessary, an extraordinary meeting of the Council will be called during the 2017/2018 Christmas recess period.
4. notes that if the urgent decision-making process is exercised, the instances will be reported to the first Council or relevant committee meeting, in 2018.
5. designates Councillor Greg Martin the authority under section 25(5) of the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act 2002 to declare a state of local emergency if required between 18 and 26 January 2018.

Carried

Cr Hermon left the meeting at 10.42am following Item 4.

7. Information Reports

7.1 Hundertwasser Wairau Maori Arts Centre

Moved By Cr Greg Innes

Seconded By Cr Crichton Christie

That Whangarei District Council notes that:

- a) three of the five pre-conditions of the agreement to lease the Old Harbour Board Building site to the Whangarei Art Museum Trust have now been met.
- b) Council will need to approve the form of the guarantees required as a pre-condition of the lease
- c) the Chief Executive will authorise the lease once all pre-conditions have been met.

Carried

Cr Cutforth requested her vote against be recorded.

8. Public Excluded Business

Moved By Cr Sue Glen

Seconded By Cr Shelley Deeming

That the public be excluded from the following parts of proceedings of this meeting. The general subject of each matter to be considered while the public is excluded, the reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter, and the specific grounds under Section 48(1) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 for the passing of this resolution are as follows:

General subject of each matter to be considered		Reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter	Ground(s) under Section 48(1) for passing this resolution
1.1	Closed Minutes Whangarei District Council 26 October 2017	Good reason to withhold information exists under Section 7 Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987	Section 48(1)(a)
1.2	Hundertwasser Wairau Maori Arts Centre Underwriting Arrangements		
1.3	Property Sale		
1.4	Whangarei District Airport Management Contract Review		
1.5	Mediation		

This resolution is made in reliance on Section 48(1)(a) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 and the particular interest or interests protected by Section 6 or Section 7 of that Act which would be prejudiced by the holding of the whole or the relevant part of the proceedings of the meeting in public, are as follows:

Item	Grounds	Section
1.1	For the reasons as stated in the open minutes.	
1.2	To enable Council to carry on without prejudice or disadvantage negotiations	Section 7(2)(h)
1.3	To enable Council to carry on without prejudice or disadvantage negotiations (including commercial and industrial negotiations).	Section 7(2)(i)
1.4	To enable Council to carry on without prejudice or disadvantage negotiations (including commercial and industrial negotiations).	Section 7(2)(i)
1.5	To enable Council to carry on without prejudice or disadvantage negotiations (including commercial and industrial negotiations).	Section 7(2)(i)

Carried

9. Closure of Meeting

The meeting concluded at 11.39am

Confirmed this 22nd day of February 2018

Her Worship the Mayor Sheryl Mai (Chairperson)

7.1 Long Term Plan 2018-28 – Audit NZ Review

Meeting: Council
Date of meeting: 14 December 2017
Reporting officer: Jill McPherson (GM Strategy and Governance)

1. Purpose

To approve the key documents for the 2018-2028 Long Term Plan (LTP) for Audit NZ review.

2. Recommendations

That Council:

1. adopts the Growth Model as contained in Attachment 1 noting it has been used in the development of the draft Long Term Plan 2018-28.
2. approves the source documents for the Consultation Document for Audit NZ review including:
 - draft Strategic Direction,
 - draft Financial Strategy,
 - draft Infrastructure Strategy,
 - draft Activity Profiles,
 - draft Significant Forecasting Assumptions, and
 - draft Financial Statements.
3. notes that further documents will be required to be completed and adopted in February 2018 for separate and concurrent special consultation including:
 - Fees and Charges
 - Revenue and Financing Policy
 - Development Contributions Policy
 - Rates Remission and Postponement Policy.
4. notes that further sections for the final Long Term Plan, that do not require consultation and are not source documents for the Consultation Document, will also be required to be completed and adopted in May 2018 before the adoption of the final Long Term Plan including:
 - Treasury and Risk Management Policy
 - Council Controlled Organisation Policies and Summaries
 - Reserve Funds
 - Accounting Policies.

3. Background

The Local Government Act requires Councils to prepare ten year plans every three years. Before the plan is adopted, Councils are required to prepare “source” documents and a consultation document for use in gaining community feedback. These and a number of associated documents are subject to audit review by Audit New Zealand before they are released for consultation.

Council begun a series of briefings on matters to do with the preparation of the LTP early this year. The last in the series for this year was held on 21 November. A draft letter has been received from Audit NZ detailing their audit programme. Most documents are required to be given to Audit NZ by 15 January 2018.

Audit NZ have described their role.

“The Act requires us to provide two separate reports as follows:

- On the consultation document, a report on:
 - whether the consultation document gives effect to the purpose specified in section 93B; and
 - the quality of the information and assumptions underlying the information in the consultation document.
- On the LTP, a report on:
 - whether the LTP gives effect to the purpose in section 93(6); and
 - the quality of the information and assumptions underlying the forecast information provided in the LTP.

We expect our work to assess the quality of underlying information and assumptions to be a single, continuous process during the entire LTP preparation period.”

Further to this, the objectives of the audit are explained.

“The objectives of the audit of the consultation document and LTP are:

- to provide independent opinions on the consultation document (under section 93C(4) of the Act) and on the LTP (under section 94(1) of the Act) about:
 - whether each document gives effect to the relevant statutory purpose; and
 - the quality of the information and assumptions underlying the information included in each document; and
- to report on matters relevant to the District Council’s planning systems that come to our attention.”

The letter of engagement will be signed by the Mayor on behalf of Council, when it is finalised.

There are several document types needed for meeting the requirement of Council having an adopted Long Term Plan 2018-28 by the end of June 2018.

- The Long-Term Plan Consultation Document
- Source documents for the Consultation Document
- Documents covering policies that require separate special consultation (to be run concurrently with the public consultation on the Long-Term Plan Consultation Document)
- Sections of the Long-Term Plan that require to be adopted by Council but are neither source documents or require public consultation.

4. Source Documents for the Long-Term Plan Consultation Document

4.1 Growth Model (Attachment One)

At the base of the infrastructure and financial strategies is a growth model. This informs estimates of increase in demand for services, and infrastructure. The model uses medium growth forecasts for the District with the exception of the Marsden/Ruakaka area where the high growth scenario is used. This is to remain consistent with the forecasts used to inform the National Policy Statement – Urban Development Capacity work.

Key Findings Include:

- Whangarei District's estimated resident population grew from 83,700 in 2013 to 89,700 in 2017. This resulted in an increase of 6,000 people, representing an average annual increase of 1,500 people or 1.8% per annum (7.16% over four years).
- The medium projection for the District sees an increase from 89,900 people in 2018 to 100,800 in 2028, resulting in an extra 10,900 people, averaging 1,090 additional people per year or 1.21% growth per annum.
- Total dwellings in the Whangarei District are forecast to increase from 35,200 in 2013 to 43,100 in 2028, resulting in an extra 7,900 dwellings, averaging 530 additional dwellings per year.
- The highest increases in population between 2018-2028 are expected to be in Marsden Point/Ruakaka, Port Limeburners, Waipu, Bream Bay and Te Hihi.
- The total business floor area is expected to increase from 1,274,600 m² in 2018 to 1,367,000 m² in 2028, averaging an increase of 9,240 m² per annum.

4.2 Strategic Direction (Attachment two)

The vision and mission for Council has not been reviewed. The Consultation Document will use a shortened version of the Vision – A vibrant, attractive and thriving District. The community outcomes have been reviewed and were adopted as part of the Community Development Committee's work on a Community Development Strategy.

The main strategic issues for the Council, when formulating the LTP, are noted as:

- Continuing to deliver efficient and effective core services including the appropriate maintenance of assets,
- Planning for and managing growth,
- Providing improved amenity and more things to do,
- Meeting expectations for on-line services and a digital Council,
- Being agile enough to cope with continuous change.

Many of these challenges were raised as important by people who engaged with Council through the early engagement activities.

4.3 Financial Strategy (Attachment Three)

The Financial Strategy sets the boundaries used by Council to determine its financial envelope. This always entails the difficult process of saying “no” to some spending that is considered a lower priority and is unaffordable within the parameters set.

The draft Financial Strategy for 2018-28 continues with similar parameters that were used for the 2015-25 Financial Strategy. It aims to:

- Achieve a balanced budget in every year with a surplus of revenue over spend.
- Revenue from land and targeted rates increasing by Local Government Cost Index (LGCI) plus 2%, with the assumption that the increase in rating units will also result in collecting a further 1% of rates revenue every year (on average). The increase allows Council to catch up faster with the renewals backlog, while still providing some new assets.
- Net debt (excluding one-building and the new theatre) remaining under the benchmarks of \$2,150 per capita, and interest payments always under 25% of rates revenue.

The only change is that the debt limit is growing with inflation and growth.

The debt is divided into two sections:

- Core net debt is the debt needed to deliver the capital projects over the ten years but excludes the debt funding for the new Civic Building and Theatre/auditorium.

The core net debt remains under \$200 million throughout the plan, increasing from \$129.1 million on 1 July 2018, ending at \$189.2 million 30 June 2028, with a peak at \$196.3 million in year 8 of the Plan.

- Total net debt includes the new Civic Building and Theatre. It increases from \$135.6 million on 1 July 2018, ending at \$248.3 million 30 June 2028, peaking at \$252.9 million in year 8. This includes the most expensive option for the new Civic Building. Depending which option is chosen, the total net debt may change.

Over the next ten years this will allow for:

- A capital works programme of \$723 million, of which 74% is on core infrastructure
- Operational revenues of \$1.8 billion, and expenditure of \$1.6 billion

There are no instances where current levels of service will be reduced.

The forecasting assumptions behind the financials are Attachment 7.

4.4 Infrastructure Strategy (Attachment Four)

This strategy is over a longer time frame of 30 years. It assumes no reduction in levels of service, and a catch-up in renewals, particularly in stormwater. All assets now have operational maintenance funding, some increasing over time.

There is some allowance for catering for growth in the District, improving amenity, and for responding to climate change.

The larger capital projects over the ten years are:

- A new civic building for Council
- A new Theatre/auditorium
- Pohe Island development
- Waiarohia Recreation Corridor (blue/green network)
- Whau Valley Treatment Plant replacement
- Riverside Drive four-laning/Onerahi bypass.

Supporting documentation includes seven Asset Management Plans, the Development Contributions Policy and schedule.

4.5 Activity Profiles (Attachment Five)

Each of Council's groups of activities has a Profile. Each profile includes:

- Contribution to community outcomes
- Levels of service, and associated performance measures
- Capital projects
- Financials.

These profiles are the basis of the chapters in the final LTP document.

They are the same groupings as in the LTP 2015 with one exception – there is a new activity "Governance and Strategy" which covers Democracy Services, Strategic Planning and Maori Relationships.

4.6 Financial Statements (Attachment Six)

Financial Statements (provided to the 21 November briefing) illustrate the

- Revenue and expenditure expectations including balancing the budget with some surpluses
- Council's equity position
- Cashflows
- Financial position.

All show that Council's finances are expected to remain healthy. The forecasting assumptions behind the financials are attached. (Attachment seven).

5. Long Term Plan Consultation Document

The consultation document will contain a summary of all the above documents. No information that is not contained within a source document is allowed to be included. It will also include a Rates Funding Impact Statement and sample properties, and options for consideration. The options currently under consideration include:

- Varying the level of infrastructure maintenance
- Changing the level of investment for catering for expected growth
- Delivering higher levels of amenity
- Increased investment in technology
- Increasing rates and options for more services e.g. walking and cycling, skateparks
- Options for the new civic building

Each section needs to refer to the documents the information has been sourced from. The document will be drafted in time for Audit NZ review from 15 January 2018 but is not available for this meeting.

6. Policy documents requiring special consultation

These documents have already been in discussion at Council briefings, and will be presented as final drafts at further Council Briefing in February. They will need to be adopted for consultation at the same meeting Council adopts the Long Term Plan Consultation Document, as consultation of these is intended to be run concurrently. They include:

- Fees and Charges Schedule
- Development Contributions Policy
- Rates Remission and Postponement Policy
- Revenue and Financing Policy

7. Other requirements for the final Long Term Plan

There are further sections of the Long Term Plan that are not needed for input into the Consultation Document or are required to go through special consultation procedures. They will need to be adopted by Council before the adoption of the final Long Term Plan in June 2018. It is planned that these documents will be presented in draft to a Council Briefing in April for adoption at the May Council Meeting. These include:

- Council Controlled Organisations Policies and Summary
- Treasury and Risk Management Policy
- Accounting Policies
- Reserve Funds.

8. Significance and engagement

The Council has reviewed and adopted the Significance and Engagement Policy as required under the Local Government Act. This forms part of the final Long Term Plan. The Local Government Act also sets out the consultation procedures required of Councils when preparing the LTP. Consultation is required for the LTP Consultation Document, and for select other policies including:

- Revenue and Financing Policy
- Development Contributions Policy
- Rates Remissions and Postponement Policy
- Fees and Charges Schedule

A separate report is on this agenda detailing the recommended programme for consultation.

9. Attachments

- Attachment 1: Growth Model
- Attachment 2: Draft Strategic Direction
- Attachment 3: Draft Financial Strategy
- Attachment 4: Draft Infrastructure Strategy
- Attachment 5: Draft Activity Profiles
- Attachment 6: Draft Financial Statements
- Attachment 7: Significant Forecasting Assumptions

Whangarei District Growth Model 2017

December 2017

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

In September 2014, Council approved the Growth Model 2014. The Growth Model 2014 utilised estimated resident populations obtained at the meshblock level and provided an analysis of possible growth scenarios for short, medium and long term for the household and business sectors.

Statistics NZ releases estimated resident populations annually at 30 June for Territorial Authorities. The estimated resident population is calculated using the natural increase figures and migration figures – both internally and overseas. The estimated resident population is considered by demographic experts to be the most accurate population count.

In May 2017, Statistics New Zealand released updated population projections from 2013 – 2038 in five year intervals.

This report recommends that Council proceed with the medium population projections from Statistics New Zealand for future growth with edits by Council Staff. This recommendation comes from remaining consistent with the National Policy Statement for Urban Development Capacity (which utilizes these medium Statistics NZ projections).

Key Findings Include:

- Whangarei District's estimated resident population grew from 83,700 in 2013 to 89,700 in 2017. This resulted in an increase of 6,000 people, representing an average annual increase of 1,500 people or 1.8% per annum (7.16% over four years).
- The medium projection for the District sees an increase from 89,900 people in 2018 to 100,800 in 2028, resulting in an extra 10,900 people, averaging 1,090 additional people per year or 1.21% growth per annum.
- Total dwellings in the Whangarei District are forecast to increase from 35,200 in 2013 to 43,100 in 2028, resulting in an extra 7,900 dwellings, averaging 530 additional dwellings per year.
- The highest increases in population between 2018-2028 are expected to be in Marsden Point/Ruakaka, Port Limeburners, Waipu, Bream Bay and Te Hihi.
- The total business floor area is expected to increase from 1,274,600 m² in 2018 to 1,367,000 m² in 2028, averaging an increase of 9,240 m² per annum.

Table of Contents

LIST OF TABLES	3
INTRODUCTION	4
ASSUMPTIONS	5
ESTIMATED RESIDENT POPULATION	7
DWELLING COUNTS	7
RATABLE PROPERTIES GROWTH RATE	7
BUSINESS COMPONENT	8
LONG TERM PLAN 2018-2028	9
INFRASTRUCTURE STRATEGY 2018-2048	9
SUMMARY	10
CONCLUSIONS	11
GROWTH MODEL DATA	12

List of Tables

Table 1 - Estimated Resident Growth Projections 2013-2058	7
Table 2 - Total Dwelling Growth Projections	7
Table 3 - Total Business Floor Area Growth Projections 2013-2058	8
Table 4 - Estimated Resident Population, Total Dwellings and Business Floor Areas, 2018-2028	9
Table 5 - Estimated Resident Population, Total Dwellings, and Business Floor Areas 2018-2048	9
Table 6 - Summary of Estimated Resident Population and Total Dwellings 2001-2023	10
Table 7 - Summary of Total Business Floor Area 2001-2023	10
Table 8 - POPULATION PROJECTIONS BY AREA UNIT 2018-2028	13
Table 9 - TOTAL DWELLING PROJECTIONS BY AREA UNIT 2018-2028	14
Table 10 - Projected Business Floor Areas by Area Unit 2018-2028	15

INTRODUCTION

The Growth Model has been prepared to assist the Whangarei District Council (WDC) in its future infrastructural planning work for the District, to determine growth in the rating base over time, and for establishing future levels of development contributions required to fund infrastructure. The Council wishes to incorporate these growth rates in its long-term community planning/annual planning process, so that they accurately reflect infrastructural development activity and funding needs within the District.

In this Growth Model, we examine population estimates and projections from Statistics NZ. Two Area Units in the District – Port Nikau and Marsden Point/ Ruakaka edited slightly and are described in the document.

The population projections were designed to meet short to medium term planning needs (3-10 years), and longer asset management planning needs (over 30 years) but are not designed to be exact forecasts. These projections are based on a series of assumptions. Although the assumptions are carefully formulated to represent future trends, they are subject to uncertainty.

The population projections should not be confused with economic forecasts. The rise, stability or fall of the population does not directly relate to the social and economic vitality of an area. However, there is an historical correlation between the economic (business) cycle and population change.

The projections do not consider non-demographic factors (such as war, catastrophes, major government and business decisions, climate change, natural hazards) which may affect the projections. The population trends are monitored regularly and, when necessary, the projections are revised to reflect new trends and to maintain their relevance and usefulness.

The methodology used to generate the growth model projections is described in relevant sections of this report. The main information sources have been:

- 1) Statistics New Zealand – Meshblock and Area Units Census Data.
- 2) Whangarei District Council Property Database – Building Consents, Building Floor Area, Land Use Codes and Valuations.
- 3) Whangarei District Council Operative District Plan – Planning Environments/Zones.
- 4) Land Information New Zealand – Parcel Boundaries.
- 5) Aerial Photography and SPOT Satellite Imagery.
- 6) Whangarei District Council Wastewater Connections.

ASSUMPTIONS

1. The areas used for statistical analyses are the 2013 Statistics New Zealand Meshblock and Area Unit Boundaries.
2. Statistics NZ has provided Medium Projections at the Area Unit (AU) level for the Whangarei District from 2013-2043. This data set has been used for the Growth Model 2017.
3. The medium projections provided by Statistics NZ at the AU level were made available from 2013-2043. For the Long-Term Plan, projections to 2058 were required. The methodology for calculating estimated resident population and total dwelling figures for 2048, 2053 and 2058 were as follows:
 - i. The % change in population from 2038-2043 was used to calculate the five-year periods from 2043-48, 2048-53 and 2053-58, as per each area unit.
 - ii. Estimated resident populations were required at the Mesh Block (MB) level for our SPM database. A calculation process was established by taking the ratio of the MB population to the AU population at 2013 and projected forward to 2058.
 - iii. For the total dwelling counts, the ratio of dwellings to estimated resident population at 2013 was used and projected to 2058.
 - iv. These MB level figures were combined on a spreadsheet and added to calculate the estimated resident population for the District overall. This number differs slightly to the projections from Statistics NZ.
4. For Marsden Point, population figures from the Growth Model 2014 were used to project the growth from 2013-2013 and extend it out an extra five years to 2028. This change results in a slightly higher growth for that area unit. Marsden Point / Ruakaka has experienced higher than expected growth in the last five years in wastewater connections and the trend is expected to continue with future subdivision growth and building consents.
5. For one Mesh Block (MB0109200) in Port Limeburners, it was anticipated that the private Port Nikau development would occur in the next 30-year period. The proposed plan estimates approximately 1,500 dwellings constructed. Therefore, that MB (and area unit) were altered to reflect a gradual growth of up to 3,000 people and 1,500 dwellings by 2048.
6. Four area units were removed from the model - Whangaruru Harbour, Inlet – Whangarei Harbour, Inlet – Tutukaka Harbour, Inlet – Port Whangarei. These four area units are not land based and there is no growth projected in them.
7. The 2013 Business Floor Area is based on commercial building consents for new buildings between January 2006 and December 2012.
8. Projections for Business Floor Area for 2014 onwards are based on the Growth Model 2014 with one exception:
 - a. The business floor area for the Marsden Point Area Unit does not include projecting growth in Meshblock (MB0079500) which contains the Marsden Point Refinery. This meshblock was removed as there is not further growth expected in the area and projecting growth on an already high business floor area gives an inaccurate projection.
9. Rates will continue to use a 1% growth rate for rateable properties. It was found that the number of rateable properties in the District has consistently grown by approximately 1% per annum in the past five years.



Figure 1 – Area Units and Meshblocks of the Whangarei District

ESTIMATED RESIDENT POPULATION

This growth model uses the estimated resident population medium projections from Statistics NZ. There were two area units, one - Marsden Point / Ruakaka - which has experienced recent high growth and another – Port Nikau - that is expected to experience high growth in the next 25 years, that were carefully analysed and amended to include this growth.

The Whangarei District currently sits at 89,700 people (30 June 2017) and is expected to reach 100,000 people by 2028.

POPULATION GROWTH			
YEAR	ESTIMATED RESIDENT POPULATION	INCREASE	% INCREASE PER ANNUM
2013	83,700		
2018	89,900	6,200	1.5%
2023	95,500	5,600	1.3%
2028	100,800	5,300	1.1%
2033	104,200	3,400	0.7%
2038	107,200	3,000	0.6%
2043	109,900	2,700	0.5%
2048	112,800	2,900	0.5%
2053	114,900	2,200	0.4%
2058	117,200	2,200	0.4%

Table 1 - Estimated Resident Growth Projections 2013-2058

DWELLING COUNTS

Included is a calculation for total dwelling counts. Through the calculations, at the area unit level, it was assumed that dwelling counts would be a consistent ratio of estimated resident population until 2058 to project the following estimates.

TOTAL DWELLING GROWTH			
YEAR	TOTAL DWELLINGS	INCREASE	% INCREASE PER ANNUM
2013	35,200		
2018	37,980	2,780	1.6%
2023	40,580	2,600	1.4%
2028	43,080	2,500	1.2%
2033	44,660	1,580	0.7%
2038	46,080	1,420	0.6%
2043	47,380	1,300	0.6%
2048	48,730	1,350	0.6%
2053	49,750	1,020	0.4%
2058	50,820	1,070	0.4%

Table 2 - Total Dwelling Growth Projections

RATABLE PROPERTIES GROWTH RATE

Rates will use a 1% increase per annum for growth. It was found that the number of rateable properties in the District has consistently grown by approximately 1% per annum in the past five years.

BUSINESS COMPONENT

The Growth Model 2017 provides a projection of business floor area (in square metres) in the Whangarei District, by Area Unit, from 2013 to 2058.

For this Growth Model, we have used the 2013 business floor areas and the 0.93% per annum for a medium projection growth taken from the Growth Model 2014. The total business floor areas for each period are illustrated in Table 3.

One minor alteration was made to the Marsden Point / Ruakaka Area Unit. The Meshblock containing the Marsden Point Oil Refinery within the area unit was removed from the calculation when projecting growth. The growth was then added to the overall figure. Because of the size of the refinery, further projecting increases on the current floor area resulted in inflated projections. This change affects the total District increase per annum.

The total business floor area is projected to increase by 92,500m² from 2013-2058 or 9,250 m² per annum – 0.7%.

BUSINESS FLOOR AREA			
YEAR	TOTAL BFA	INCREASE	% INCREASE PER ANNUM
2013	1,231,394		
2018	1,274,584	43,190	0.70%
2023	1,319,783	45,198	0.71%
2028	1,367,083	47,300	0.72%
2033	1,416,582	49,500	0.72%
2038	1,468,384	51,801	0.73%
2043	1,522,594	54,210	0.74%
2048	1,579,325	56,731	0.75%
2053	1,638,694	59,369	0.75%
2058	1,700,823	62,130	0.76%

Table 3 - Total Business Floor Area Growth Projections 2013-2058

LONG TERM PLAN 2018-2028

The table below assists with planning for the LTP period using the edited Statistics NZ medium projection. Estimated Resident Population, Total Dwelling Figures, and Business Floor Area were projected for the specific years for the District overall. Table 5

	2018	2019	2020	2021	2028
Population	89,900	91,020	92,140	93,260	100,760
Total Dwellings	37,980	38,500	39,020	39,540	43,080
Business Floor Area	1,274,600	1,283,200	1,291,800	1,300,400	1,367,000
	2018-2019	2019-2020	2020-2021	2018-2028	2018-2028 Per Annum Average
Population Increase	1,120	1,120	1,120	10,860	1,086
% Increase in Population	1.2%	1.2%	1.2%	12.1%	1.2%
	2018-2019	2019-2020	2020-2021	2018-2028	2018-2028 Per Annum Average
Total Dwelling Increase	520	520	520	5100	510
% Increase Total Dwellings	1.4%	1.4%	1.4%	13.4%	1.3%
	2018-2019	2019-2020	2020-2021	2018-2028	2018-2028 Per Annum Average
Business Floor Area Increase	8,600	8,600	8,600	92,400	9,240
% Increase in Business Floor Area	0.7%	0.7%	0.7%	7.25%	0.7%

Table 4 - Estimated Resident Population, Total Dwellings and Business Floor Areas, 2018-2028

INFRASTRUCTURE STRATEGY 2018-2048

Table 5 illustrates the figures for Estimated Resident Population, Total Dwellings and Business Floor Areas for use with Asset Management planning using the edited Statistics NZ Medium projection.

	2018	2023	2028	2033	2038	2043	2048
Population	89,900	95,500	100,800	104,200	107,200	109,900	112,800
Total Dwellings	37,980	40,580	43,080	44,660	46,080	47,380	48,730
Business Floor Area	1,274,600	1,319,800	1,367,000	1,416,600	1,468,400	1,522,600	1,579,300
		2018-2023	2023-2028	2028-2033	2033-2038	2038-2043	2043-2048
Population Increase		5,600	5,300	3,400	3,000	2,700	2,900
% Increase in Population		6.2%	5.5%	3.37%	2.88%	2.52%	2.64%
% Increase in Population pa		1.2%	1.1%	0.67%	0.58%	0.53%	0.39%
		2018-2023	2023-2028	2028-2033	2033-2038	2038-2043	2043-2048
Total Dwelling Increase		2,600	2,500	1,580	1,420	1,300	1,350
% Increase Total Dwellings		6.8%	6.2%	3.7%	3.2%	2.8%	2.1%
% Increase Total Dwellings pa		1.4%	1.2%	0.7%	0.6%	0.6%	0.6%
		2018-2023	2023-2028	2028-2033	2033-2038	2038-2043	2043-2048
BFA Increase		45,200	45,200	47,300	49,500	51,800	54,200
% Increase in BFA		3.5%	3.6%	3.6%	3.6%	3.87%	3.7%
% Increase BFA pa		0.7%	0.7%	0.7%	0.7%	0.7%	0.7%

Table 5 - Estimated Resident Population, Total Dwellings, and Business Floor Areas 2018-2048¹

¹ The years portrayed are for the calendar year not the financial year.

SUMMARY

Total	2001	2006	2013	2018	2023
Population	70,000	76,500	83,700	89,900	95,500
Total Dwellings	29,388	32,202	35,200	37,980	40,580
Increase	2001-2006	2006-2013	2013-2018	2018-2023	Annual 2013-2023
Population	6,500	7,200	6,200	5,600	1,180
Total Dwellings	2,814	3,138	2,780	2,600	538
Increase Per Annum	2001-2006	2006-2013	2013-2018	2018-2023	Annual 2013-2023
Population	1,300	1,029	1,240	1,120	1,180
Total Dwellings	563	448	556	520	538
Growth Rates	2001-2006	2006-2013	2013-2018	2018-2023	Annual 2013-2023
Population	9.3%	9.4%	7.4%	5.4%	1.37%
Total Dwellings	9.6%	9.7%	7.9%	6.8%	1.47%
Growth Rates per Annum	2001-2006	2006-2013	2013-2018	2018-2023	Annual 2013-2023
Population	1.86%	1.34%	1.48%	1.08%	1.37%
Total Dwellings	1.92%	1.39%	1.58%	1.37%	1.47%

Table 6 - Summary of Estimated Resident Population and Total Dwellings 2001-2023

Total	2001	2006	2013	2018	2023
Business Floor Area (m ²)	874,423	1,055,606	1,231,400	1,274,600	1,319,800
Change	2001-2006	2006-2013	2013-2018	2018-2023	Annual 2013-2023
Business Floor Area (m ²)	181,183	175,788	43,200	45,200	8,840
Growth Rates	2001-2006	2006-2013	2013-2018	2018-2023	Annual 2013-2023
Business Floor Area (m ²)	20.72%	16.65%	3.51%	3.55%	0.72%

Table 7 - Summary of Total Business Floor Area 2001-2023

CONCLUSIONS

The Growth Model assesses future population and dwelling counts in the Whangarei District and outlines projections for growth over the short to medium term (from 2018 to 2023) and over the longer term (2018-2058).

In Summary, the following conclusions can be made:

- The Whangarei District population is projected to increase from 89,900 in 2018 to 100,800 in 2028, resulting in an extra 10,160 people, averaging 1,016 additional people per year.
- The population growth is forecast to increase by 12.1% or 1.21% per annum.
- The total dwellings in the Whangarei District is forecast to increase from 37,980 in 2018 to 43,080 in 2028, resulting in an extra 5,100 dwellings, averaging 510 additional dwellings per year.
- The highest increases in population between 2018-2028 are expected to be in Marsden Point/Ruakaka, Port Limeburner, Waipu, Bream Bay and Te Hihi.
- The total business floor area is expected to increase from 1,274,600 m² in 2018 to 1,367,000 m² in 2028, averaging 9,240 m² per annum.

GROWTH MODEL DATA

Area Unit	2018	2019	2020	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	2027	2028
Abbey Caves	740	750	760	770	780	790	800	810	820	830	840
Bream Bay	1,050	1,070	1,090	1,110	1,130	1,150	1,170	1,190	1,210	1,230	1,250
Bream Head	1,540	1,556	1,572	1,588	1,604	1,620	1,636	1,652	1,668	1,684	1,700
Hikurangi	1,630	1,638	1,646	1,654	1,662	1,670	1,676	1,682	1,688	1,694	1,700
Horahora	1,200	1,212	1,224	1,236	1,248	1,260	1,268	1,276	1,284	1,292	1,300
Kamo East	4,030	4,082	4,134	4,186	4,238	4,290	4,320	4,350	4,380	4,410	4,440
Kamo West	4,030	4,024	4,018	4,012	4,006	4,000	3,996	3,992	3,988	3,984	3,980
Kensington	1,440	1,444	1,448	1,452	1,456	1,460	1,462	1,464	1,466	1,468	1,470
Mairtown	2,670	2,678	2,686	2,694	2,702	2,710	2,716	2,722	2,728	2,734	2,740
Marsden Point- Ruakaka	4,770	5,044	5,318	5,592	5,866	6,140	6,506	6,872	7,238	7,604	7,970
Maungatapere	1,490	1,502	1,514	1,526	1,538	1,550	1,564	1,578	1,592	1,606	1,620
Maunu	1,470	1,472	1,474	1,476	1,478	1,480	1,484	1,488	1,492	1,496	1,500
Morningside	2,400	2,404	2,408	2,412	2,416	2,420	2,424	2,428	2,432	2,436	2,440
Ngunguru	1,830	1,856	1,882	1,908	1,934	1,960	1,978	1,996	2,014	2,032	2,050
Onerahi	2,310	2,318	2,326	2,334	2,342	2,350	2,354	2,358	2,362	2,366	2,370
Opouteke-Tanekaha	5,510	5,578	5,646	5,714	5,782	5,850	5,904	5,958	6,012	6,066	6,120
Otaika-Portland	1,220	1,230	1,240	1,250	1,260	1,270	1,280	1,290	1,300	1,310	1,320
Otangarei	1,950	1,954	1,958	1,962	1,966	1,970	1,974	1,978	1,982	1,986	1,990
Parahaki	1,280	1,282	1,284	1,286	1,288	1,290	1,294	1,298	1,302	1,306	1,310
Parua Bay	2,410	2,446	2,482	2,518	2,554	2,590	2,614	2,638	2,662	2,686	2,710
Pataua-Whareora	1,370	1,398	1,426	1,454	1,482	1,510	1,538	1,566	1,594	1,622	1,650
Port-Limeburners	40	132	224	316	408	500	600	700	800	900	1,000
Punaruku-Kiripaka	4,780	4,848	4,916	4,984	5,052	5,120	5,174	5,228	5,282	5,336	5,390
Raumanga East	1,870	1,882	1,894	1,906	1,918	1,930	1,940	1,950	1,960	1,970	1,980
Raumanga West	3,320	3,324	3,328	3,332	3,336	3,340	3,340	3,340	3,340	3,340	3,340
Regent	1,750	1,754	1,758	1,762	1,766	1,770	1,772	1,774	1,776	1,778	1,780
Riverside	780	782	784	786	788	790	792	794	796	798	800
Sherwood Rise	4,330	4,364	4,398	4,432	4,466	4,500	4,534	4,568	4,602	4,636	4,670
Springs Flat	1,770	1,800	1,830	1,860	1,890	1,920	1,936	1,952	1,968	1,984	2,000
Te Hihi	1,440	1,464	1,488	1,512	1,536	1,560	1,584	1,608	1,632	1,656	1,680
Three Mile Bush	1,190	1,208	1,226	1,244	1,262	1,280	1,298	1,316	1,334	1,352	1,370
Tikipunga East	3,490	3,514	3,538	3,562	3,586	3,610	3,620	3,630	3,640	3,650	3,660
Tikipunga West	3,369	3,381	3,394	3,407	3,419	3,432	3,440	3,447	3,455	3,462	3,470
Vinetown	1,640	1,648	1,656	1,664	1,672	1,680	1,690	1,700	1,710	1,720	1,730
Waiotira-Springfield	2,360	2,396	2,432	2,468	2,504	2,540	2,576	2,612	2,648	2,684	2,720
Waipu	2,190	2,248	2,306	2,364	2,422	2,480	2,514	2,548	2,582	2,616	2,650
Western Hills	280	282	284	286	288	290	292	294	296	298	300
Whangarei Central	200	202	204	206	208	210	210	210	210	210	210
Wharekohe-Oakleigh	4,170	4,224	4,278	4,332	4,386	4,440	4,494	4,548	4,602	4,656	4,710
Whau Valley	2,660	2,670	2,680	2,690	2,700	2,710	2,716	2,722	2,728	2,734	2,740
Woodhill	1,930	1,948	1,966	1,984	2,002	2,020	2,034	2,048	2,062	2,076	2,090
Grand Total	89,900	91,010	92,121	93,231	94,342	95,452	96,514	97,575	98,637	99,698	100,760

Table 8 - POPULATION PROJECTIONS BY AREA UNIT 2018-2028

Area Unit	2018	2019	2020	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	2027	2028
Abbey Caves	264	267	271	275	278	282	285	289	292	296	299
Bream Bay	462	471	480	489	498	506	515	524	533	542	551
Bream Head	966	976	986	996	1,006	1,016	1,026	1,036	1,046	1,056	1,066
Hikurangi	565	568	571	574	576	579	581	583	585	587	589
Horahora	482	487	492	497	501	506	509	513	516	519	522
Kamo East	1,457	1,475	1,494	1,513	1,532	1,551	1,561	1,572	1,583	1,594	1,605
Kamo West	1,582	1,580	1,577	1,575	1,573	1,570	1,569	1,567	1,566	1,564	1,563
Kensington	650	651	653	655	657	659	660	660	661	662	663
Mairtown	1,285	1,289	1,292	1,296	1,300	1,304	1,307	1,310	1,313	1,316	1,318
Marsden Point-Ruakaka	2,423	2,563	2,702	2,841	2,980	3,119	3,305	3,491	3,677	3,863	4,049
Maungatapere	532	536	541	545	549	553	558	563	568	573	578
Maunu	531	532	532	533	534	535	536	538	539	540	542
Morningside	902	903	905	906	908	909	911	912	914	915	917
Ngunguru	1,148	1,165	1,181	1,197	1,213	1,230	1,241	1,252	1,264	1,275	1,286
Onerahi	940	943	946	949	953	956	958	959	961	962	964
Opouteke-Tanekaha	1,911	1,934	1,958	1,982	2,005	2,029	2,047	2,066	2,085	2,104	2,122
Otaika-Portland	450	454	458	461	465	469	472	476	480	483	487
Otangarei	675	677	678	680	681	682	684	685	687	688	689
Parahaki	511	512	513	513	514	515	517	518	520	521	523
Parua Bay	1,014	1,029	1,045	1,060	1,075	1,090	1,100	1,110	1,120	1,130	1,140
Pataua-Whareora	705	719	734	748	763	777	792	806	820	835	849
Port-Limeburners	21	69	118	166	214	263	315	368	420	473	525
Punaruksu-Kiripaka	2,976	3,018	3,061	3,103	3,145	3,188	3,221	3,255	3,289	3,322	3,356
Raumanga East	624	628	632	636	640	644	647	651	654	657	661
Raumanga West	1,088	1,089	1,091	1,092	1,093	1,095	1,095	1,095	1,095	1,095	1,095
Regent	794	795	797	799	801	803	804	804	805	806	807
Riverside	426	427	428	429	430	431	433	434	435	436	437
Sherwood Rise	1,718	1,732	1,745	1,759	1,772	1,786	1,799	1,813	1,826	1,840	1,853
Springs Flat	605	615	625	636	646	656	662	667	673	678	684
Te Hihi	524	533	541	550	559	567	576	585	594	602	611
Three Mile Bush	376	382	388	394	399	405	411	416	422	428	433
Tikipunga East	1,262	1,270	1,279	1,288	1,296	1,305	1,309	1,312	1,316	1,319	1,323
Tikipunga West	1,248	1,253	1,257	1,262	1,267	1,271	1,274	1,277	1,280	1,283	1,285
Vinetown	776	780	783	787	791	795	799	804	809	814	818
Waiotira-Springfield	906	919	933	947	961	975	988	1,002	1,016	1,030	1,044
Waipu	1,565	1,606	1,648	1,689	1,731	1,772	1,797	1,821	1,845	1,869	1,894
Western Hills	110	111	111	112	113	114	115	115	116	117	118
Whangarei Central	100	101	102	103	104	105	105	105	105	105	105
Wharekohe-Oakleigh	1,590	1,610	1,631	1,651	1,672	1,692	1,713	1,734	1,754	1,775	1,795
Whau Valley	1,026	1,030	1,034	1,038	1,041	1,045	1,048	1,050	1,052	1,055	1,057
Woodhill	790	797	805	812	819	827	832	838	844	850	855
Grand Total	37,978	38,497	39,017	39,536	40,056	40,575	41,076	41,577	42,078	42,579	43,080

Table 9 - TOTAL DWELLING PROJECTIONS BY AREA UNIT 2018-2028

Area Unit	2018	2019	2020	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	2027	2028
Abbey Caves	10,447	10,547	10,646	10,745	10,845	10,944	11,044	11,143	11,243	11,342	11,441
Bream Bay	255	258	260	263	265	267	270	272	275	277	280
Bream Head	14	14	14	14	14	14	14	15	15	15	15
Hikurangi	21,655	21,861	22,067	22,273	22,480	22,686	22,892	23,098	23,304	23,510	23,716
Horahora	321	324	327	330	334	337	340	343	346	349	352
Kamo East	22,111	22,322	22,532	22,743	22,953	23,164	23,374	23,584	23,795	24,005	24,216
Kamo West	7,241	7,310	7,379	7,447	7,516	7,585	7,654	7,723	7,792	7,861	7,930
Kensington	7,381	7,451	7,521	7,592	7,662	7,732	7,802	7,873	7,943	8,013	8,083
Mairtown	222	224	226	228	230	232	235	237	239	241	243
Marsden Point-Ruakaka	355,985	356,494	357,002	357,510	358,018	358,527	359,035	359,543	360,051	360,560	361,068
Maungatapere	12,225	12,342	12,458	12,574	12,691	12,807	12,923	13,040	13,156	13,272	13,389
Maunu	620	625	631	637	643	649	655	661	667	673	678
Morningside	58,656	59,215	59,773	60,331	60,889	61,447	62,005	62,564	63,122	63,680	64,238
Ngunguru	649	655	661	667	674	680	686	92	698	704	711
Onerahi	12,155	12,271	12,386	12,502	12,618	12,733	12,849	12,965	13,080	13,196	13,312
Opouteke-Tanekaha	798	806	814	821	829	836	844	852	859	867	874
Otaika-Portland	5,541	5,594	5,647	5,699	5,752	5,805	5,858	5,910	5,963	6,016	6,069
Otangarei	1,149	1,160	1,171	1,182	1,193	1,204	1,215	1,226	1,237	1,247	1,258
Parahaki	1,341	1,353	1,366	1,379	1,392	1,404	1,417	1,430	1,443	1,455	1,468
Parua Bay	415	419	423	427	431	435	439	443	447	451	455
Pataua-Whareora	602	607	613	619	625	630	636	642	648	653	659
Port-Limeburners	237,319	239,577	241,836	244,094	246,353	248,611	250,869	253,128	255,386	257,644	259,903
Punaruku-Kiripaka	1,057	1,067	1,077	1,087	1,097	1,107	1,117	1,127	1,137	1,147	1,158
Raumanga East	2,715	2,740	2,766	2,792	2,818	2,844	2,870	2,895	2,921	2,947	2,973
Raumanga West	9,293	9,381	9,470	9,558	9,647	9,735	9,824	9,912	10,000	10,089	10,177
Regent	60,309	60,883	61,457	62,030	62,604	63,178	63,752	64,326	64,900	65,474	66,048
Riverside	8,051	8,127	8,204	8,281	8,357	8,434	8,510	8,587	8,664	8,740	8,817
Sherwood Rise	2,209	2,230	2,251	2,272	2,293	2,314	2,335	2,356	2,377	2,398	2,419
Springs Flat	43,532	43,947	44,361	44,775	45,189	45,604	46,018	46,432	46,846	47,261	47,675
Te Hihi	151	152	154	155	156	158	159	161	162	164	165
Tikipunga West	2,727	2,753	2,779	2,805	2,831	2,857	2,883	2,909	2,935	2,961	2,987
Vinetown	5,242	5,292	5,342	5,392	5,441	5,491	5,541	5,591	5,641	5,691	5,741
Waiotira-Springfield	3,718	3,754	3,789	3,824	3,860	3,895	3,931	3,966	4,001	4,037	4,072
Waipu	19,926	20,116	20,306	20,495	20,685	20,875	21,064	21,254	21,443	21,633	21,823
Whangarei Central	351,548	354,893	358,238	361,584	364,929	368,275	371,620	374,965	378,311	381,656	385,002
Wharekohe-Oakleigh	575	580	585	591	596	602	607	613	618	624	629
Whau Valley	4,508	4,551	4,594	4,637	4,680	4,723	4,766	4,809	4,852	4,894	4,937
Woodhill	1,920	1,939	1,957	1,975	1,993	2,012	2,030	2,048	2,067	2,085	2,103
TOTAL	1,274,584	1,283,834	1,293,084	1,302,334	1,311,584	1,320,833	1,330,083	1,339,333	1,348,583	1,357,833	1,367,083

Table 10 - Projected Business Floor Areas by Area Unit 2018-2028

Attachment 2:

Strategy Overview

Vision and Community Outcomes

The community outcomes are positive statements from our community about its vision for our District. They drive every Council activity.

The way each of our activities contributes to our community outcomes is described in chapter three.

Vision:

Whangarei District Council will work with the people of Whangarei so we all live in:

A vibrant, attractive and thriving district.

Outcomes:

- **Efficient and resilient core services:**
 - It is easy and safe for everyone to travel around the District
 - There are opportunities to walk and cycle
 - The District is well prepared for growth and can adapt to change
 - Services are supplied in ways that benefit the environment.
- **Positive about the future:**
 - The District has productive land, people and a thriving City centre
 - There is a fair urban/rural balance
 - Council has clear, simple documents and rules
 - The District embraces new technology and opportunity.
- **Caring for the environment:**
 - Communities work to keep the environment clean and healthy
 - Access to the coast is protected
 - Open spaces in parks and streets are places where nature thrives
 - The District is adapting positively to climate change.
- **Proud to be local:**
 - The District is neat, tidy and looks attractive.
 - Public areas feel and are safe
 - There is always something to do and see
 - There are opportunities for people of all abilities, ages and life stages to be active.

This information will be displayed as a Sidebar

- Our people have spoken. Through many and varied forms of consultation and communication, the people of Whangarei have told Council they expect it to provide efficient and resilient core services, and that we are achieving that, which is how it should be.
- Public feedback has encouraged Council to keep going with innovative initiatives like the Hatea Loop, with improving its delivery of core services, with the development of other significant projects planned for the District, and with exploring new ways to enhance our District.
- Like us, they recognise that our people and place are exceptional and unique, and they want us to build on our strengths, maximise its potential for positive growth, and continue creating the best place in the world to live, work, visit, invest and play.
- To do that we first needed to know whether our community's wants, needs, hopes and dreams have changed over the years, so we studied the feedback from our early consultation on this Plan. We wanted to see if the Community Outcomes we had been working towards for the past few years still reflected the aspirations of our community.
- Strong messages came through from community meetings and submissions. Our people wanted us to provide efficient services and assets, be positive about the future, care for the environment, take pride in our District; and enable our communities to live a good life here.
- Council staff worked hard to translate these into service provision, and the result is a fresh 'take' on Council's Vision and Community Outcomes. In most cases this revised approach is very technical, but this level of detail is what Council needs to deliver to the Whangarei community what it tells us it needs and wants.

Council and Māori working in Partnership

Further developing relationships with tangata whenua is a priority for Council at both the governance and operational levels. While some progress has been made, more work is necessary in the area of meeting agreed priorities.

Te Karearea, our strategic partnership forum with Māori formed in 2012, is made up of hapu representatives of the major hapu groupings from within the District. Together, these representatives advocate for hapu of Whangarei. They meet in their own forum, named Te Huinga, to discuss common issues that are then brought to Te Karearea.

The purpose of the partnership is to achieve the agreed vision, to build the relationship between Council and Whangarei hapu incrementally, and to develop more robust partnership arrangements over time through learning conversations. The strategic intent of the Te Karearea strategic forum is articulated through the following vision, mission and principles:

Te Pae Tawhiti/Vision

He whenua Rangatira – Whangarei, a District of prosperity, well-being and empowered communities.

Te Kaupapa/Mission

Ka tutuki te Kawanatanga a-rohe, ka puawai hoki te kotahitanga me ona tini kaupapa – Local Government that works through effective partnerships and provides practical solutions.

Nga Tikanga/Principles

- **He kitenga mutunga kore, mahi tahi, mahi pono** – Strategic partnership working collaboratively and in good faith.
- **Kia maia** – Providing leadership through courage.
- **Te Manawatapu** – Of one heart and mind. We are stronger working together.
- **Anga Mua** – Progressive and proactive.
- **Me Korero tika, tau noa nga take** – Open and frank mutually-agreed outcomes.

Whangarei District's iwi and hapu are in a pre-settlement phase for Treaty of Waitangi claims. Council is open to considering new ways of working with Māori as a result of these settlements, as they occur.

Council will continue to meet all its legal obligations to Māori under legislation, including the Resource Management Act and Local Government Act.

Challenges facing Council

Over the past 10-20 years, a huge amount of progress has been made in our District.

From major projects designed to make the harbour cleaner to bringing in kerbside recycling, from walkways in our most scenic spots to huge events like the British & Irish Lions game – our District has achieved multiple developments and improvements.

We've built the new award-winning Central Library which is now attended by about 35,000 people a year, helped to get village planning under way for Parua Bay, Otangarei, Hikurangi and Waipu, opened the Puwera Landfill, overhauled the Hikurangi flood protection scheme, established new walkways, built Te Matau a Pohe and undertaken a raft of major roading projects across the District and in the City.

By working to the goals set in each of our Long Term Plans over the years, we have addressed a very long list of issues for our communities. As a result, we have arrived at this point in a very solid, positive position and have a strong foundation from which to move forward. However, we will continue to address remaining and emerging challenges.

The challenges facing Council:

- **Infrastructure maintenance:** The need to continue our focus on ensuring the core assets we have already invested in, are maintained and renewed to maintain existing levels of service.
- **A growing District:** Population and household growth has increased over the past three years. Whangarei is classified as a “high growth” area under the National Policy Statement for Urban Development Capacity (NPS-UDC). The growth model supporting the Long Term Plan (LTP), which is largely based on Statistics New Zealand's NPS-UDC projections, shows a picture of continued population increase for Whangarei District beyond what was predicted in earlier models.
- **Increased expectation of higher levels of amenity across the District:** Amenity is the enjoyment of and engagement with Council infrastructure projects, with the term ‘adding amenity’ meaning taking the project beyond what would otherwise be standard infrastructure projects, and providing ‘more things to see and do’ in the District.
- **Funding for growth and high levels of amenity:** Growth and increasing expectations for amenity require a balance of the funding for maintenance and renewal of core assets.
- **Financial envelope:** In developing an LTP, it is necessary to establish a financial envelope within which to operate, including identifying appropriate levels of debt, rates, capital and operating expenditure, development contributions and fees and charges.
- **Council revenue:** Each year, Council receives revenue from rates and other sources to cover all operating expenditure including depreciation (i.e. creating a balanced budget). When the budget is not balanced and more funding is needed, that money generally comes from either increasing debt or sale of assets. This situation can arise as a result of significant population growth, increased levels of service, or where operating revenue or rates are too low.

- **Advances in technology:** There is a greater expectation from our community and our customers that Council is able to interact using the latest technology and social media. This impacts on the way we consult and engage, and the way we deliver our services.

Changes made from community engagement and consultation

Early engagement on the Long Term Plan

We decided to undertake early engagement on our Long Term Plan (LTP) from June through to August 2017. This provided an opportunity for our communities to engage with us in a more informal way.

Throughout the early engagement period, there were various ways in which the community could get involved and have their say on the upcoming LTP. These included 13 public meetings, a hui, Matariki Festival stall, two 'Have Your Say' events, hardcopy submission and online submission through the 'Here to Where' website.

This early engagement was successful, accumulating over 1,400 items of feedback from over 500 submissions.

Key themes

Key themes identified through the early engagement include:

- Making our public spaces tidy and more attractive
- More walking and cycling options
- Delivering our core services and ensuring they are properly maintained
- Providing things to see and do across our District
- Importance of recreation, sports and community facilities.

Submissions

To be updated following formal consultation and hearings in 2018.

Key changes

The key changes are described below:

To be updated following formal consultation and hearings in 2018.

Strategic Projects

This section contains a summary of the strategic projects and programmes that we will deliver over the next 10 years. These projects have been identified due to their contribution to making our district vibrant, attractive and thriving as well as their cost.

One building: 2018 -19

Funding: Debt (over and above core debt)

To provide a single building for Council staff and elected members to drive operational efficiencies as well as providing an improved customer experience.

Replace Whau Valley Treatment Plant: 2018 - 20

Funding: Water Reserve / Debt

The Whau Valley Water Treatment Plant was originally constructed in 1953 and supplies potable water to the Whangarei urban area. It is no longer fit for purpose due to varied constraints. This project seeks to replace the existing plant with a modern facility to meet growth and levels of service expectations for the city.

Blue Green Network: 2018 – 26

Funding: Debt

Implementation of the Blue Green Network Strategy to give access to our waterways and green spaces across the city, whilst providing flood protection and improving biodiversity.

Asset Data improvement: 2018 – 28

Funding: Rates (opex)

This suite of projects is critical for improving our understanding of the condition of our underground assets across our district. It will enable better decision making and prioritisation for asset maintenance and replacement. It also ensures that our Asset Management Information System remains supported.

Whangarei City Centre Plan implementation: 2018 – 28

Funding: Debt and Rates

The City Centre Plan was adopted in 2017. It identifies a number of actions to bring activity and vibrancy to our city centre.

Town Basin Development: 2018 – 28

Funding: Debt and Rates

This incorporates significant developments around our Town Basin and waterfront including physical improvements and projects as well as events.

Community development framework: 2018 – 28

Funding: Debt and Rates

Funding for working with our communities across the district, to deliver meaningful change through community led development projects and community grants.

New airport investigation: 2018-28

Funding: Rates

Scoping, planning and engineering considerations for a new airport site for the District. Our current airport will ultimately be unfit for purpose due to changes in airplane and airline operator requirements

Walking and cycling infrastructure: 2018-28**Funding: Debt and Subsidies**

Significant investment in walking and cycling infrastructure across our district, supported by a subsidy from central government.

Digital Council: 2018 -28**Funding: Rates**

Ongoing improvements to our technological capabilities leading to significant improvements to our business and our interactions to our communities.

Pohe Island: 2019 – 25**Funding: Debt**

A significant upgrade to Pohe Island to create a recreational hub for the district. This will incorporate cycling facilities, play spaces, landscaping and car parking.

New theatre: 2021 – 22**Funding: Debt (over and above core debt) or Public Private Partnership**

A new theatre to attract large events and performances. Acknowledging the limitations on capacity in our existing venues.

Waipu Cove/Langs Beach wastewater network improvements: 2023 – 28**Funding: Debt or Targeted Rate or Wastewater Reserve**

Necessary improvements to the waste water network for Waipu Cove and Langs Beach, to support growth and make the network more resilient.

Upgrade Riverside Drive by construction four lanes to Onerahi: 2024 - 28**Funding: Debt / Subsidies**

The Whangarei Heads, Parua Bay and Onerahi areas are expected to experience continued growth. Riverside Drive to Onerahi does not have viable diversion routes and is a critical route for the connection of communities. Council is exploring the upgrade of Riverside Drive to four lanes.

Wairua River Source and Treatment at Poroti: 2025 – 28**Funding: Debt / Water Reserve**

Upgrade Treatment Plants at Poroti Springs to support the current and new system in time of water shortage.

Strategic overview

The 2015-25 Long Term Plan began a new direction for Council, focused on the need to increase investment in core services. These services are central to the successful function of a community, and include the provision of water, waste disposal, stormwater, roads, footpaths and places to socialise and exercise.

To do this, Council identified that more money would be needed through a rates increase to maintain and renew assets and deliver the levels of service the community says it wants.

This updated 2018 Infrastructure Strategy and Finance Strategy are based on and continue the themes of Council's 2015-25 Long Term Plan (LTP). They are also shaped by the key strategic directions from Council's new community outcomes, feedback and direction, which were provided through early engagement with the community. This resulted in a vision for Whangarei to be an attractive, vibrant, attractive and thriving District.

The following strategic issues have been identified:

- **The need to continue focusing on core assets**

To maintain existing levels of service, Council needs to ensure that the assets it already has are maintained and renewed to existing levels of service. Many are aged and worn, with some deteriorating faster than expected and others located underground, making it difficult to assess their condition accurately. In some areas, notably stormwater drains, renewals have historically been underfunded. Within the stormwater, wastewater and water networks (and to a lesser extent, Parks and Recreation facilities) insufficient information is available to plan proactively for and prioritise the maintenance and renewal of assets.

- **Whangarei is a growing district**

Population and household growth has increased in the past three years. The 2017 Growth Model supporting these strategies shows a picture of continued population increase beyond what was predicted in the 2014 Growth Model. We therefore need to ensure development can meet this growing demand into the future.

- **Across the district there is an increased expectation of things to see and do**

Our residents not only expect to have things to see and do, they expect them to be attractive, high quality, engaging and appropriate to our people and place. We call this 'adding amenity', a term that is often used in conjunction with the phrase, Sense of Place. Examples in the last three years include key amenity projects such as the addition of the Pocket Park to the very popular Hatea Loop. As a growing district, there is a greater expectation to see these types of projects throughout our urban environment and rural areas.

Growth and increasing expectations for amenity require a balance between funding for the maintenance and renewal of core assets.

These issues also consistently require Council to balance limited funding across competing priorities. While Council's preferred option remains to continue to deliver at the current level of service through rates increases above inflation over the 10 years of the Long Term Plan (LTP), it is proposed to enhance this delivery through:

Increasing Council's self-imposed debt limits by inflation and growth over the 10 years. This will enable greater investment in renewals in earlier years, while also providing headroom for growth and amenity projects. We will still keep our debt level well below our debt ceiling despite responding to growth on a per capita basis.

- Prioritising the money spent on stormwater renewals by allocating funding within the 2018 – 28 LTP and building capacity to deliver over the entire life of the LTP.
- Including funding to grow and improve knowledge on assets and information systems to aid decision making on funding priorities.
- Reviewing the adequacy of infrastructure to service the National Policy Statement on Urban Development Capacity (NPS-UDC) growth projections, as described below, through a review of Council's 30/50 Sustainable Futures Growth Strategy.
- Consolidating Parks and Recreation 'Sense of Place' funding into a dedicated programme primarily focused on cornerstone projects around Pohe Island, the Hatea Loop and the Blue Green Network.

Managing our Growth

Our District is growing and we expect it to continue to grow by an estimated 1.2% per annum over the next 10 years. The population of the District is projected to increase from 89,700 today to around 100,760 in 2028.

This represents an average annual increase of around 1,000 people per year, and a total increase in population of about 11,000 over the next decade, increasing total dwellings by around 1.3% (or 510 additional dwellings) per year. In some parts of the District, growth has the potential to be substantial, particularly in the Marsden Point/Ruakaka area and along the coast. This expected growth in our population requires considerable investment in infrastructure, services and community facilities at substantial cost to Council, the business sector and the community, in general.

While this growth is desirable and to be encouraged, it will continue to put pressure on our core infrastructure and community facilities in the medium and long term. Our transportation and roading network, water and wastewater services and parks and recreational facilities need to carry enough capacity to provide for predicted growth, with the anticipation of what has to happen and when it is needed being a significant challenge for Council.

In response to growth, the government has introduced a National Policy Statement on Urban Development Capacity which directs Council to respond to and manage growth. This will be achieved by reviewing the adopted Whangarei District Growth Strategy: Sustainable Futures 30/50.

This Growth Strategy determines existing and potential land use patterns. This allows us to manage the impact of growth and assess and plan for infrastructure requirements for our District over a 30-50 year time frame.

Because land use patterns affect both the timing and costing of core infrastructure, the Infrastructure Strategy builds on the direction set in the Whangarei District Growth Strategy to provide more detailed planning of our network infrastructure needs. Our Activity and Asset Management Plans have also been developed with regard to the Growth Strategy to encourage growth where it has been considered desirable and where infrastructure is capable of meeting increased demand.

Financial Strategy

Please Note: The Financial Strategy is a work in progress so not all figures, tables or graphs have been updated to reflect the latest financials. There will be adjustments to address anomalies or minor limit breaches before this is finalised for adoption. However, the basic premises of this strategy will not be changed.

Overview

In a nutshell, the Financial Strategy for the LTP sets the financial parameters or 'envelope' within which Council will operate and fund its operations and capital programme (spending on capital projects) for the next 10 years.

Council wants to continue a 'steady as it goes' approach flowing from what has been achieved in the first three years of the 2015 – 25 Long Term Plan (LTP). Feedback from the community directs us to keep improving the District's infrastructure and amenities to cope with growth, without ignoring upkeep of the things in which we have already invested.

Council recognises that Whangarei District is a high growth area, with a population expected to increase to more than 100,000 by the end of 2028. A cornerstone of the Financial Strategy must therefore be to provide adequate funding to meet future requirements for the increased demand on infrastructure, services and extra amenity across the District. As stated in the Strategic Overview, adding amenity means making our assets more attractive, engaging and appropriate to our people and place, and is often used alongside or in place of the phrase, Sense of Place.

Land use changes through our Rural Strategy and Plan Review, along with strategic direction from our compliance with the National Policy Statement on Urban Development Capacity, will see land appropriately zoned to meet demands of growth for housing, commercial and agricultural uses. The focus for urban land uses will be in and around the growth nodes identified in our adopted Whangarei District Growth Strategy: Sustainable Futures 30:50.

While it would be ideal to satisfy the needs, and wants of everyone in our community, Council can only fund so much. It needs to work within its financial constraints to deliver the facilities, services and infrastructure that bring the most benefit to the majority of people for the greatest length of time.

Financial Parameters

Council has set the following financial parameters for the 2018-28 LTP:

1. A balanced budget (as defined in the Financial Prudence Benchmarks) every year, where revenue exceeds expenditure, including depreciation.

2. Land rates and Targeted rates (excluding Water and Flood Protection) increasing by the Local Government Cost Index (LGCI), plus 2%, plus Growth (1%) over each of the 10 years
3. Water rates will only be increased by annual Growth of 0.6% each year, as this will provide adequate funding for this activity.
4. Flood Protection rates will increase by 8% each year until 2022 then increase by LGCI from then on.
5. Limit overall rates revenue, which is the income from rates (excluding water rates), to a maximum of 70% of total revenue gained from all income sources.
6. Allow the net 'Core Debt' limit to increase by LGCI and Growth over the 10 years.

(IN SIDEBAR) Insert callout or graphic with the wording –

Debt = Borrowings from banks

Net Debt = Borrowings from banks less any term deposits or cash at a given point in time

Net Core Debt = borrowings from banks (less any term deposits or cash at a given point in time) required to fund Council's capital programme and excludes debt used to fund Special Projects that are identified from time to time.

Total Net Debt = Net Core Debt + the extra debt used to fund Special Projects that are identified from time to time

The opening Net Core Debt limit for July 2018 of \$ 161.5 million will increase to \$ 223.8 million by June 2028 to allow the funding of:

- a. uncompleted capital projects carried forward from years 1 to 3 of the 2015-25 LTP
- b. capital projects already identified in years 4 to 10 of the 2015-25 LTP
- c. new projects for years 8 to 10 of the 2018-28 LTP
- d. additional projects identified through engagement with the public on the 2018-28 LTP.

Note: Actual Net Core Debt will peak at \$196.3m, as discussed in the Debt section on page 8.

7. Special projects will be funded by debt over and above Net Core Debt. To provide inter-generational equity, a concept of funding fairness defined in more detail on the following page, these projects are funded over a proposed 30-year timeframe from completion of the project. Special Projects identified in this LTP are:
 - new Council Premises
 - new Theatre Complex.

Any future Special Projects will be consulted on with Whangarei ratepayers as specific initiatives before any debt funding is allocated.

8. Have Net Core Debt no higher than 150% of total Revenue and net Total Debt less than 175% of Revenue.
9. Have the Total Net Debt per Capita level less than \$2,150 per Whangarei District resident in 2017/18, with that limit increased by LGCI over each of the 10 years of the LTP to maintain buying power.

10. Have net interest costs on Total Net Debt at less than 25% of Rates revenue.
11. Provide sufficient funding through Net Core Debt and Operating Surpluses (the difference between income and spending), to complete the planned capital expenditure programme (excluding Special Projects) without reliance on selling assets.

Over the next 10 years this allows for:

- a capital works programme of \$723 million
- 74% of capital expenditure focused on core network infrastructure such as roads, water, waste, stormwater and flood protection
- operational revenues of \$1.8 billion
- operational spending of \$1.6 billion.

Building a sustainable financial strategy

This Financial Strategy is based on fulfilling the core purpose of local government, which is to “meet the current and future needs of communities for good-quality local infrastructure, local public services and performance of regulatory functions in a way that is most cost-effective for households and businesses”.

We have continued to reflect on the community’s needs and our current financial position to make decisions on what Council believes are appropriate ways to fund the delivery of all the services that our community requires – both now and into the future, taking into consideration our growing population.

We continue to examine the state of our network infrastructure and community assets, the levels of service that our community expects us to deliver and the funding required to achieve this. This, in turn, has led to an examination of the funding allocation between ratepayers, services and debt. This Strategy, together with the Infrastructure Strategy, addresses these issues and describes our funding model, or the way in which we intend to fund future projects.

This is a sustainable financial strategy. By the end of the 10-year planning period, Council will have an income base that allows it to provide the services that our community expects, without leaving a large backlog of asset maintenance and renewal for later generations to deal with. While that does mean rates rises beyond the level of inflation, we believe they are necessary to provide the range and quality of services our community demands with a focus on increased services, i.e. things to see and do, and amenity.

Inter-generational equity

The concept of achieving fairness between ratepayers over time is called ‘inter-generational equity’.

Council has a responsibility to consider the interests of the community now as well as in the future. As a result, we try to ensure that, as far as possible, today’s ratepayers only pay for services they are likely to use, and not for benefits that will be received by new ratepayers in the future.

We need to make sure that today's ratepayers are paying their fair share of the 'wear and tear' on assets that are used to provide services they receive. While things like roads and water pipelines have useful lives that can span decades, they deteriorate a little every year.

However, because many of our assets have long lives, they will provide benefits to future ratepayers as well. When we build new assets, we need to consider how much of the expenditure required should be funded through current ratepayers (via rates) and how much should be funded through future ratepayers by borrowing now and repaying debt later when future ratepayers become users.

Maintaining levels of service

For this LTP we have also completed a 30-year Infrastructure Strategy that provides a blueprint for delivery of services through our network infrastructure for which this Financial Strategy has been prepared to give effect to.

Enjoyment of and engagement with this infrastructure, will be improved in the following areas:

- Pohe Island
- Multi modal transport options – more walking and cycling
- the Blue/Green network and the Town Basin precinct.

The Level of Service describes what the community can expect from Council's infrastructure and services and is a combination of:

- the quality of infrastructure provided by Council.
- the standard to which infrastructure is maintained.
- the services that assets, staff and contractors provide to the community.

Council is focussed on ensuring that the targeted Levels of Service identified in the LTP are maintained.

The appropriate level of service in each activity area has been carefully considered by Council, along with the additional demand for infrastructure and services in the District due to predicted growth. In each activity area, they have taken into account the ongoing effects of every decision, and inevitably, there have been tensions, gaps or conflicts between the desired level of service and the level that can be provided within the financial parameters outlined in this Strategy.

The Asset and Activity Management Plans upon which this Plan is based have therefore generally been prepared with the aim of maintaining current levels of service throughout the 10-year timeline of the Plan. This 'hold and maintain' strategy will be managed by looking for ways to be cost-effective across Council's planned operations, infrastructure maintenance, renewal and capital upgrades. Council will also review operational practices to find ways to be more efficient without adversely impacting service level delivery.

There are no instances where current LTP level of service targets have reduced from the last LTP.

Funding

Throughout the 10 years of this Financial Strategy, Council will rely on funding from a variety of sources, with rates being the largest portion.

Funding sources

General rates	40%
User charges	15%
NZTA subsidies	13%
Wastewater targeted rates	12%
Metered water	9%
Other targeted rates	5%
Development contributions	3%
Other	3%
Total	100%

*Other = petrol tax, fines and infringements, interest received, dividends received.

A key activity in the development of this Strategy was confirming levels at which revenues need to be set based on the following principles. Where possible:

- revenues are sufficient to cover expenses
- asset renewals and replacements are affordable within the available funding
- funding allows for major capital projects the community wants
- current service level targets are achieved
- the needs of current and future ratepayers have been considered
- we have balanced our budget each year
- rates increases are affordable.

Rates

This section will be added once Council has resolved what changes (if any) to make a result of the review of rating policies.

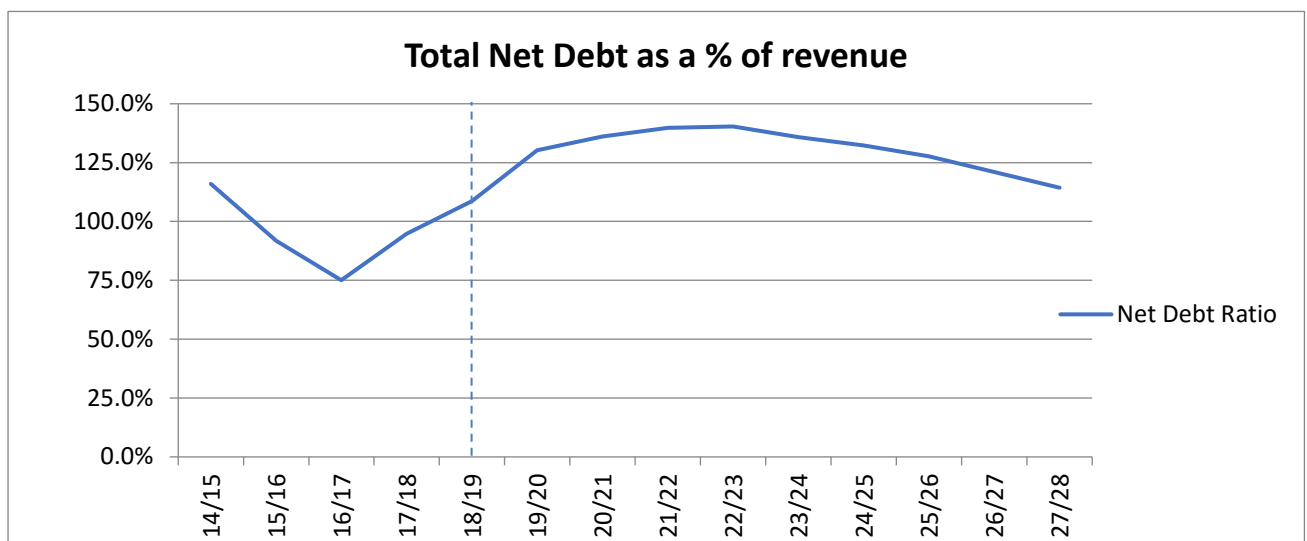
Debt, interest and internal funding

Debt

This Strategy sees Net Core Debt (excluding special projects) increasing from \$129.1 million on 1 July 2018, ending at \$189.2 million 30 June 2028, with a peak at \$196.3 million in year 8 of the Plan.

Total Net Debt (including the two proposed Special Projects; new Council Premises and Theatre Complex), increases from \$135.6 million on 1 July 2018, ending at \$248.3 million 30 June 2028, peaking at \$252.9 million in year 8.

The graph below compares Total Net Debt to Revenue and shows an improving trend over the 10 years of the Plan.



Until the end of the 2014-15 year, Council managed its debt from a gross debt perspective. From the 2015-16 year, measurement has been from a net debt perspective.

Finance Costs

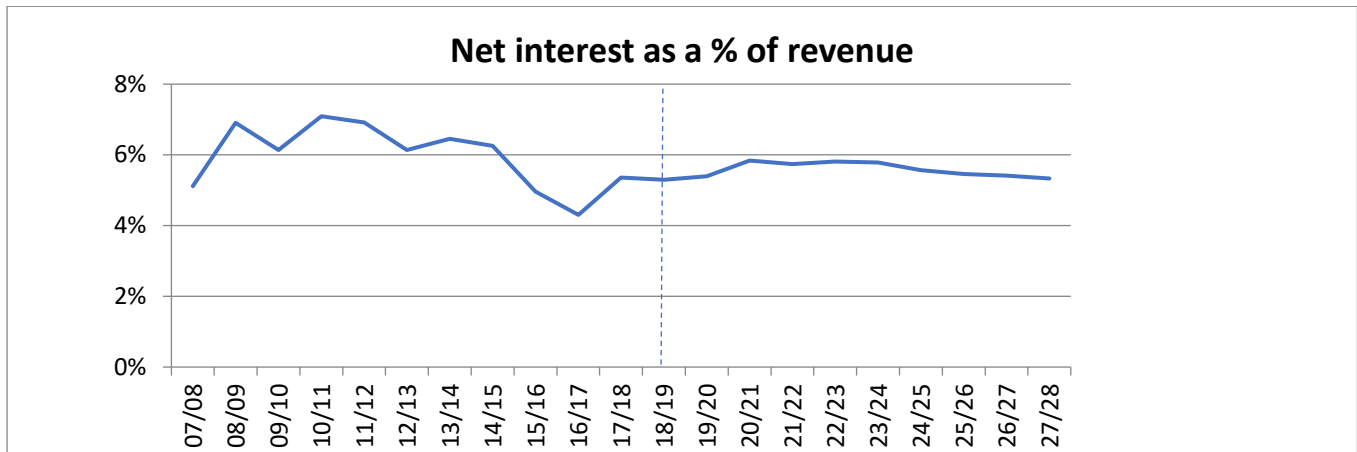
Council minimises its cost of debt by using interest rate swaps to protect against interest rate or margin increases. Debt maturities, or the dates when loan agreements must be repaid, are spread over both short and long terms, as well as a mixture of fixed and variable interest rates.

To minimise financing costs, Council is a member of the Local Government Funding Agency (LGFA). This means Council can borrow at better rates than are available through direct lending from trading banks.

In May 2016, Council had its credit rating upgraded to AA by Standard and Poors with a credit rate outlook of 'stable', primarily in recognition of its strong financial management and very strong budgetary flexibility. This AA credit rating was reconfirmed in May 2017. An AA credit rating assists in reducing financing costs.

The LTP assumes an interest rate averaging 4.66% across the 10 years, after taking all factors outlined above into account.

Interest as a % of revenue



Internal Funding

As part of its financial, or treasury, management, Council minimises its overall interest costs by using funds held in reserve as 'internal borrowing', i.e. rather than keeping funds on deposit while borrowing all the money needed to fund capital works, reserve funds are used in the short term, and they are repaid in future, as they are needed. Council intends to continue this approach into the future.

The largest reserve fund is the Property Reinvestment Reserve (PRR) which was originally created in 2010 through the sale of Council's interests in leasehold land to those already leasing the properties. This fund had built to \$28 million by 30 June 2015, with all the funds used to finance infrastructure projects through internal lending.

However, Council has decided that from 1 July 2015 the proceeds of commercial property sales would be set aside for purchases that met Councils' property objectives, as stated in its Property Policy. The portion of the PRR available for reinvestment is shown in the table below.

While there are no specific plans to sell more commercial property in this LTP, if any sales were to take place, the proceeds would be added to this reserve and be available for reinvestment. An annual dividend will also be added to the amount available for reinvestment. In the meantime, the original reserve balance of \$28 million would continue to be used to fund other Council activities.

Council has not identified or budgeted for any property purchases in the next 10 years. However, it is recognised that there is a possibility that investment opportunities may arise from time to time. Consideration may be given to funding a purchase, where there is an identified strategic benefit and/or the predicted return from a potential commercial property investment is greater than the cost of capital, thereby reducing the PRR balance. If there are insufficient PRR funds available for reinvestment, purchases are likely to be debt-funded and dealt with via a Council resolution or future Annual Plan/LTP process, as appropriate.

Property Reinvestment Reserve

	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	Year 6	Year 7	Year 8	Year 9	Year 10
	2018 - 19	2019 - 20	2020 - 21	2021 - 22	2022 - 23	2023 - 24	2024 - 25	2025 - 26	2026 - 27	2027 - 28
Opening Balance	30,742	31,357	31,984	32,624	33,276	33,942	34,620	35,313	36,019	36,739
Funding allocated to Council Activities	28,229	28,229	28,229	28,229	28,229	28,229	28,229	28,229	28,229	28,229
Funding available for Reinvestment	2,513	3,128	3,755	4,395	5,047	5,713	6,392	7,084	7,790	8,510
Dividend 2%	615	627	640	652	666	679	692	706	720	735
Closing balance	31,357	31,984	32,624	33,276	33,942	34,620	35,313	36,019	36,739	37,474

Other significant reserve funds include Community Development Funds (holding \$10.6 million as at 30 June 2017) and asset reserves that are created when targeted rates for an activity are accumulated before the money needs to be spent. As an example, there was a balance of \$26.9 million in the Water reserve as at 30 June 2017, which will be used over the life of the LTP to fund water projects as they are completed.

At the outset of this LTP, internal funding will total around \$78 million, which is expected to decrease to around \$60 million by 2028.

Internal interest charges are allocated to each activity for their share of funds borrowed from reserves, with these costs outlined in the Activity Funding Impact Statements accompanying each Activity in the line item 'Finance Costs'. The resulting revenue from these charges is outlined within the Activity Funding Impact Statements, line item 'Local authorities fuel tax, fines, infringement fees and other receipts'. No internal interest is included in the Prospective Funding Impact Statement for Whangarei District Council.

Fees and charges

Council will increase most fees and charges annually to align with the Local Government Cost Index (LGCI) inflation rate, which ranges from 2.00% to 2.60% across the 10 years of the Plan. In some areas, such as food inspections and liquor licensing, Council will seek to recover actual costs, which will result in increases beyond inflation. Council's fees and charges are reviewed on an annual basis.

NZTA subsidies

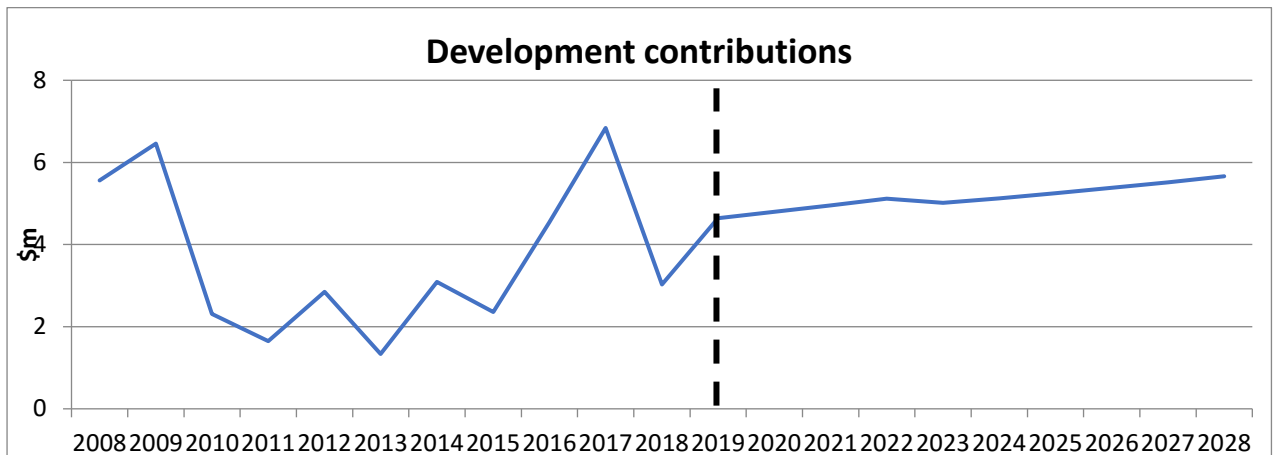
Subsidies from Central Government via the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA) provide a significant source of funding for our transportation activities, such as road construction and repair. In 2018-19 Council expects to receive NZTA subsidies of \$19 million, representing 53% of the gross cost of both operating and capital expenditure, on a wide range of approved roading projects. At the time of completion of this Plan, NZTA had not confirmed the subsidies applied for by Council.

Development Contributions

Council's practice is to fund most of the growth component of capital expenditure through Development Contributions (DCs), or the financial charges levied on developers, with the remainder funded through rates. Over the past few years, Whangarei has experienced positive growth with corresponding higher DC revenue, so Council has taken a more optimistic approach to forecasting revenues in this area.

Across the 10 years of this Plan, we expect to proceed with around \$119 million of growth projects. Forecast income of \$51 million from Development Contributions will cover some of this cost, with the remainder of funding to come from rates and subsidies.

Development contributions



Expenditure

Operational activities

With the impact of inflation and growth, total annual expenditure is forecast to increase from \$140 million to \$177 million over the 10 years of the Plan, while total annual revenue is expected to increase from \$148 million to \$216 million over the same period. This will provide an operating surplus in every year of the Plan.

Forecasting Council's operational expenditure is a balancing act. Local government costs are rising faster than the costs of general consumer goods, and as a result, Council must rise to the challenge of meeting levels of service while at the same time looking to save costs wherever it can. Council also needs to allow for the effects of population growth and operating costs associated with new assets in preparing its budgets.

One of the best ways to limit costs is to review the supply chain to ensure purchases are at the best prices. Continuous improvement of Council processes will also result in less cost and best use of available funds, or doing more with less. Council constantly reviews its operating costs with items such as bank charges, interest rates, preferred supplier arrangements and competitive procurement tendering.

The tables below show the split of total forecast operating costs for each Council Activity and expenditure type for the 2018 – 28 planning period.

Breakdown by activity	\$000	% of total
Network \$m		
Transportation	350,996	22.3%
Water	142,978	9.1%
Wastewater	129,988	8.2%
Stormwater	45,451	2.9%
Flood Protection & Control Works	10,597	0.7%
Total	680,010	43.2%
Other		
Solid Waste	83,926	5.3%
Community Facilities	312,705	19.8%
Planning & Regulatory	115,156	7.3%
District Strategy & Governance	56,269	3.6%
Corporate & Finance	327,768	20.8%
Total	895,823	56.8%
Total operating expenditure	1,575,834	100.0%
Breakdown by expenditure type		
Operating expenditure	432,679	27.5%
Professional fees	46,007	2.9%
Repairs and maintenance	222,884	14.1%
Depreciation	452,840	28.7%
Finance costs	99,748	6.3%
Personnel costs	321,676	20.4%
Total	1,575,834	100.0%

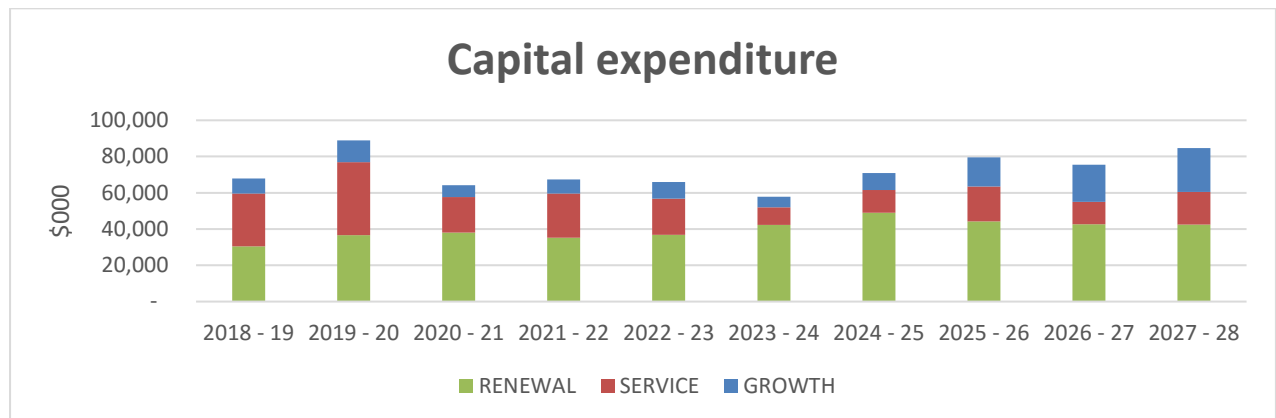
Capital expenditure

Allowing for inflation over the life of the Plan, Council's total annual capital expenditure ranges from \$58 million to \$89 million. We have assumed carry forwards (transferral of funds for uncompleted project from one year to another), of \$15 million from the 2017-2018 financial year to the 2018-2019 financial year. These carry forwards are not included in the capital projects list because the individual projects making up this list have not yet been identified.

Expenditure is funded by a combination of operating surplus, rates, debt, development contributions and government subsidies. Council is expected to receive NZTA subsidies for roading expenditure of 53% over the lifetime of the Plan.

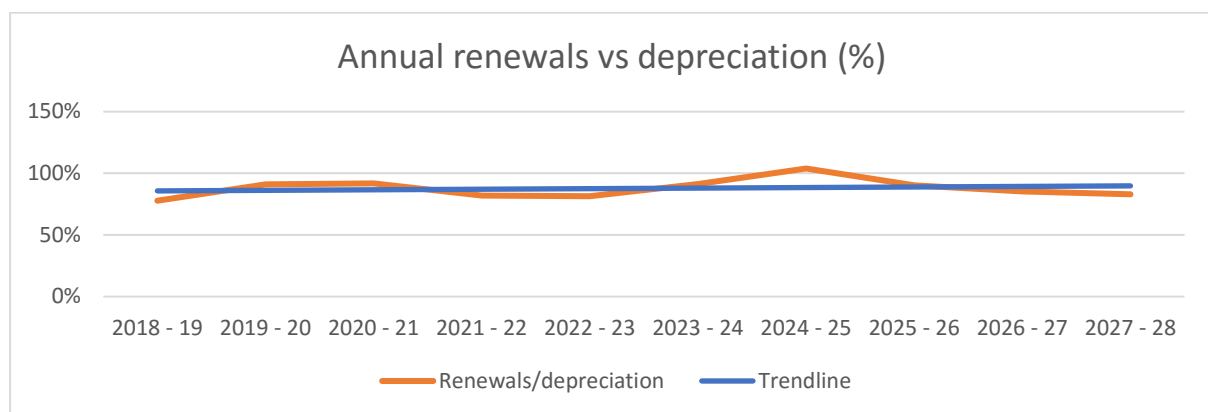
The graph below illustrates planned capital expenditure over the 10 years of the Plan of \$723 million. The renewal of existing assets accounts for 55% of total expenditure, with 28% providing for improving levels of service and the balance of 17% providing for growth.

Planned capital expenditure



Just over half the expenditure is for the renewal of existing assets and upgrades to extend their useful life. Each year a depreciation amount is estimated. This represents the portion of an asset's useful life that has been used up through 'wear and tear' in that year by current ratepayers. Depreciation is calculated for all assets, and while each year's renewal programme only affects a portion of assets, all of them will be replaced over time. The graph below shows the relationship between these two amounts over the life of the Plan.

Renewals to depreciation



This graph shows the average ratio of renewals to depreciation to be 88%. While renewal expenditure should roughly match depreciation expense in the long term, Council takes a cautious approach that will not compromise service levels in the foreseeable future or leave a significant backlog of asset replacement for future generations. This issue is explored in more depth in the Infrastructure Strategy.

Capital Expenditure by activity type is allocated as shown in the table below.

Network Infrastructure	\$000	% of total
Transportation	295,095	40.8%
Water	108,383	15.0%
Wastewater	91,236	12.6%
Stormwater	39,138	5.4%
Flood Protection	3,711	0.5%
Total	537,564	74.4%
Other		
Solid Waste	622	0.1%
Community Facilities	123,136	17.0%
Planning & Regulatory	1,619	0.2%
District Strategy & Governance	2,736	0.4%
Corporate & Finance	56,989	7.9%
Total	185,101	25.6%
Total capital expenditure	722,665	100.0%

Note: Solid Waste expenditure relates solely to transfer stations, which are the only solid waste assets directly owned by Council. The bulk of our refuse management operations (including the landfill and Re-Sort facility) are delivered with our joint venture partner through the Northland Regional Landfill.

As the above table shows, over the life of the Plan, 74% of capital expenditure is focused on network infrastructure, reflecting Council's recognition that it still has to invest considerable amounts in our core assets to meet the service levels the community expects.

However, community facilities like boat ramps, playgrounds, walking tracks and theatres, are a significant component of a happy, engaged, balanced and sustainable community, and form an important part of Council's aspirations to improve the Sense of Place and economic, social, health and education statistics in our District. While some consider these projects as 'nice to have', Council views them as just as important as core infrastructure in achieving its overall outcomes, while recognising that expenditure on them needs to be kept in check.

Assets

Council holds a range of fixed assets, or assets that are purchased for long-term use, which were valued as at 30 June 2017 at \$1.5 billion. A total of \$1.4 billion (92%) of these comprise our core network assets such as roads, water systems, wastewater, stormwater and flood protection infrastructure.

Asset Management Plans have been prepared for infrastructure assets, setting out the expenditure on maintenance and renewals required to ensure they are appropriately managed and maintained to meet Council's targeted levels of service. Council intends to maintain these assets in accordance with these plans.

Council also holds various operational and investment assets, including property (incorporating land, buildings, ground leases and land held for development) and small forestry blocks.

The full insurance programme for these assets was reviewed in 2016 resulting in a change of brokers and some schedules being managed directly with insurers.

Council's assets are insured in a number of ways through a number of insurance providers. The exception to this is roading assets which are covered, in part, by emergency reinstatement funding from NZTA.

All underground assets, which were previously insured under the Local Authority Protection Programme Disaster Fund (LAPP), are now covered under a commercial insurance.

Valuations have been completed for most of Council's assets during the 2016-17 financial year, with insurance schedules updated throughout the financial year as changes occurred within Council.

Current insurance levels are:

- full value for underground assets, in line with recent valuations
- commercial insurance around 90% of the value of assets
- roading insurance through the NZTA at 53%

Insurance levels are reviewed annually in line with scheduled renewal dates.

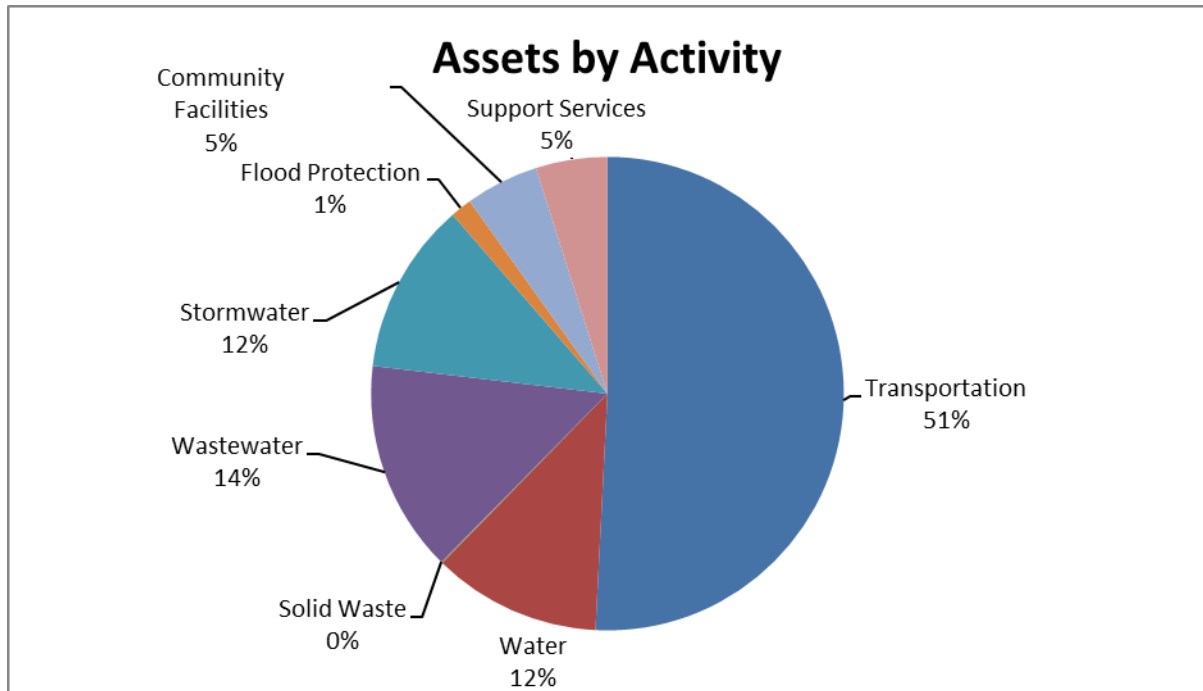
A full review of insurance providers was undertaken in 2016-17, and this will be reviewed again in the 2019-20 financial year.

2017 was a revaluation year. Revaluation information was not available until after the placement of the 2017-18 insurance programme and, because of this, Council's insurance schedules were again subject to a full review. This process involved an assessment to determine whether the costs of asset replacement across Council should be met by commercial insurers, LAPP and NZTA, or self-insurance. Following this review, the insurance schedule was finalised, with respective insurers notified of adjustments.

Direct equity investments in Council Controlled Organisations (CCOs) and Council Controlled Trading Organisations (CCTOs) and other shareholdings in the form of investment in land, buildings, airport assets and artwork, make up the remainder of Council's assets. These investments are also reviewed on a regular basis to ensure that they are still appropriate for Council to retain.

Over the period of this Plan, the value of assets is expected to rise considerably as capital works projects create new assets of significant value, and existing assets are revalued every three years.

Assets by Activity



Minimising Risk

In preparing this Plan, Council had to make some assumptions about what will happen in the future. However, this always brings with it a level of risk. We have identified four major areas of risk that could impact on our ability to deliver on our Financial Strategy.

Our District is susceptible to extreme weather events which requires funding to be available for unplanned repair works. The main impacts are felt in our roading network, but there is often damage to other infrastructure such as pipelines, walking tracks and coastal structures. While we design and build our infrastructure assets to have resilience to these storm events, we are still often faced with unplanned repairs. Council has considered the establishment of a reserve fund to cover storm damage, but has chosen not to do so now. Rather, Council would fund maintenance and capital works by utilising the money it had available to reach its debt limit. If this was not possible then Council would defer operating costs and capital spending to accommodate the work required to make good the damage.

No provision has been made for catastrophic events such as tsunamis, as this would be so disruptive that a business continuity plan based on the current operating model would be impractical and other interventions (such as central government support) would be required.

We know that population growth and development will continue, but we cannot accurately quantify exactly when, where or to what extent it will occur. Our Asset Management Plans and Infrastructure and Financial Strategies are all based on historical trends and future growth forecasts to give us the best prediction of our District's needs into the future. While several projects that support growth are included in our LTP, we will review actual growth patterns and infrastructure needs each year and adjust the programme accordingly.

Adverse global economic conditions can also have a negative impact on Council's financial resources, as well as those of our ratepayers and residents. While forecasts of future economic conditions are built into this plan, provision is also made to adjust activities if there is a downturn. Measures include access to debt markets, liquidity parameters and projects that can be scaled or deferred to match population growth or financial resources.

Conversely, buoyant global economic conditions can lead to higher interest rates. Given the level of Council's external debt, every 1% increase in interest rates represents about 2.4% of general rates. However, we manage our vulnerability to interest rate movement through a hedging programme that minimises the risk of financial loss and gives us a high degree of protection from global or national events. In other words, we have capped our interest rates for many years into the future at the current rates of between 3.86% and 6.00%.

We also take a conservative approach to our debt levels, meaning that we have considerable capacity to raise debt to deal with abnormal events and emergencies. While there is no intention to increase debt beyond the levels shown elsewhere in this Strategy, it is important to note that we have access to more funding in the unlikely event that it is needed.

Limits and Policies

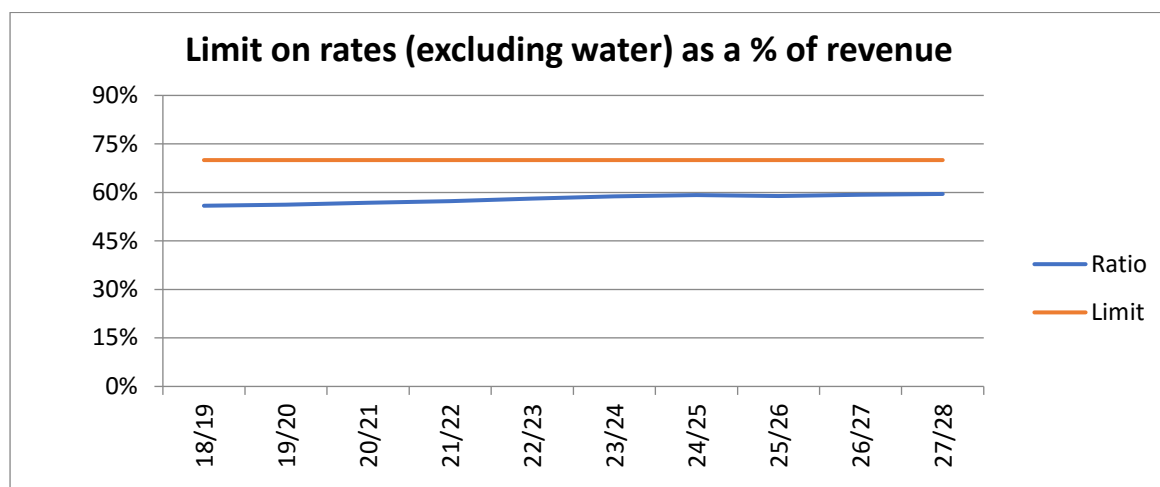
Limit on rates

Council does not have a particularly diverse income stream, with the main sources being rates, fees and charges, development contributions and government subsidies (e.g. for roading). There is limited scope to add new revenue sources without allocating funds to new investments, so the reliance on rates as a revenue source will remain relatively high.

While Council will continue its approach of allocating rates as a funding distribution based on who causes and benefits from its activities, it will also endeavour to limit rates (excluding water) * collected each year to a maximum of 70% of total Council revenue, with the long-term average below this limit.

This limit will be reconsidered as part of every Annual Plan and LTP to ensure that it remains practical given Council's financial position and broader economic conditions at that time.

Limit on rates (excluding water) as a % of revenue



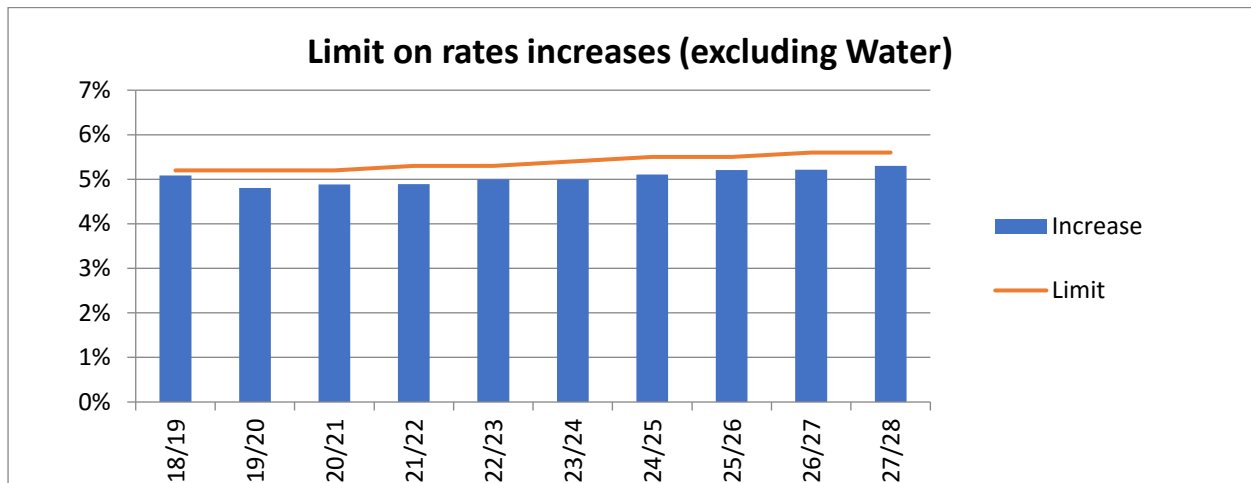
* For the purpose of this limit, rates are defined as all revenue derived from general rates and targeted rates, but excluding water rates, which are effectively a consumption charge and are therefore out of Council's direct control.

Limit on rate increases

As noted in the Rates section above, Council intends to apply an increase of 2% above inflation to all rating types apart from water. The inflation factor used is the Local Government Cost Index.

Rating revenue will also increase through natural growth in the rating base, i.e. as our population grows. An allowance of 1% per annum is made for rates levied on all ratepayers, and 0.8% for wastewater and 0.6% water, as some growth will be outside the water and wastewater network areas.

Limit on rates (excluding Water) as a % of revenue



For reporting purposes, the target set on the limit on rates' increases will be reviewed and possibly reset in each year's Annual Plan based on the latest LGCI predictions.

From time to time there may be extraordinary events that mean Council may have to go outside these limits. For instance, there may be a need to fund the clean up after a catastrophic event. However, these situations are considered to be unlikely and have not been provided for in this Plan.

Limits on borrowing

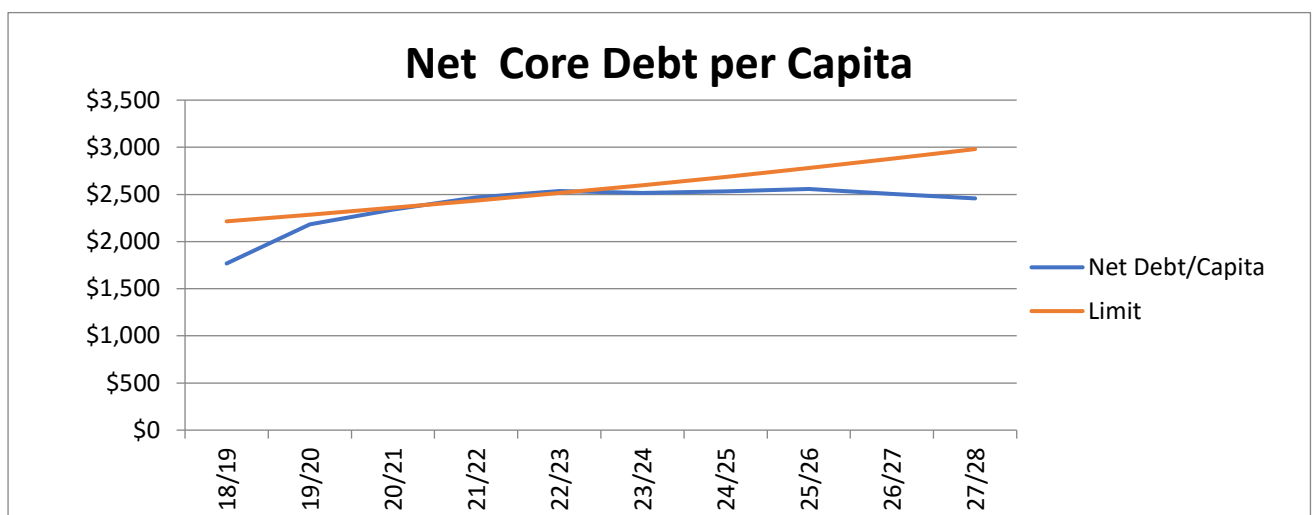
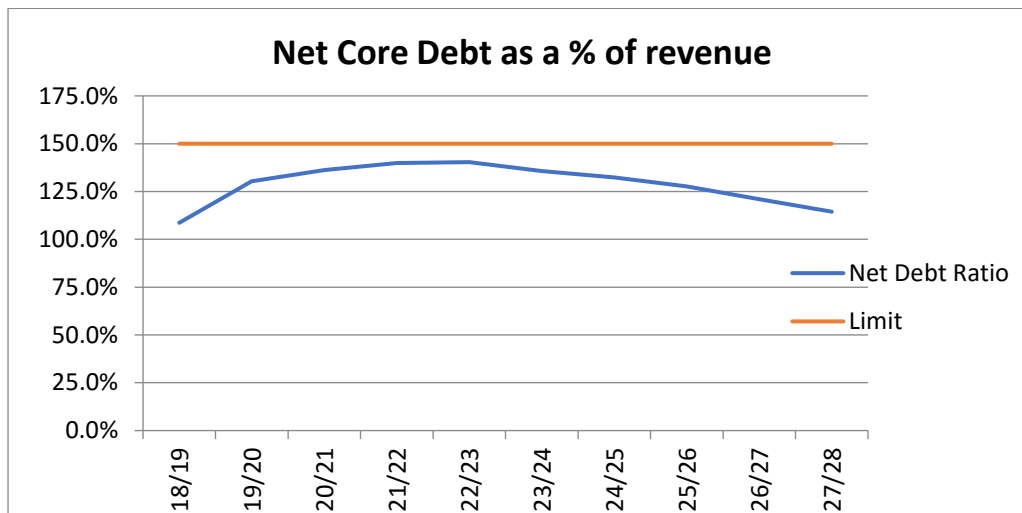
To allow for inflation and growth, the debt limit increases over the life of the Plan from \$161.5 million on 1 July 2018, by LGCI and growth over the 10 years. This means that the Net Core Debt limit increases to \$223.2 million by July 2028.

There are two other limits on borrowing:

- limiting external Net Core Debt (the portion of debt borrowed from creditors outside Council) to less than 150% of revenue, and
- limiting the Net Core Debt per capita level (the debt per head of the District's population) to below \$2,150 in the 2017/18 financial year, growing by LGCI plus 1% growth over the 10 years.

Details on how Council's debt is managed are set out in the Treasury and Risk Management Policy, which is available on request.

Council also utilises internal funding which is not subject to the above limits.



NOTE: In this initial draft strategy, there is a minor breach of this policy in Years 4 and 5. This will be addressed before the plan is released for consultation

Council Organisations

Council currently delivers a variety of services through Council Organisations, Council Controlled Organisations and Council Controlled Trading Organisations where it considers this is a more effective, efficient and financially viable option compared to other means of delivery.

There are four Council Controlled Organisations:

- Whangarei Waste Ltd
- Whangarei Art Museum Trust
- Northland Events Centre Trust
- Whangarei District Airport.

There is one Council Controlled Trading Organisation:

- Northland Regional Landfill Limited Partnership.

There is one Council Organisation:

- Whangarei Quarry Gardens Trust

Council also has a small (3.3%) shareholding in the New Zealand Local Government Funding Agency, which is owned by 30 councils and the Crown.

Council does not intend to make any significant changes to the current funding arrangements for these Council Organisations throughout the 2018-2028 LTP.

Monitoring and reviewing the strategy

As part of business-as-usual, we constantly scan the financial environment and our own performance to monitor:

- sustainability of our financial performance and position
- emerging risks
- whether the Strategy is being implemented
- trends in the community's ability to pay.

The Strategy will be reviewed every three years as part of the LTP process. Consideration will also be given to the impacts of any significant changes in local, national or global economic conditions during each year's Annual Plan process.

Supporting documentation available

The policies listed below have been developed in conjunction with this LTP, and are available upon request:

Revenue and Financing Policy (page xx)

Treasury and Risk Management Policy

Development Contributions Policy.

Infrastructure Strategy

2018 - 2048

INFPLAN-1596125988-258

1	Introduction	3
1.1	Purpose and Scope	3
1.2	Strategic Framework.....	3
1.3	Using this document	3
	Part 1: Strategic Direction and Decisions	2
2	Council's Strategy	2
3	Strategic Context	3
3.1	Growth and Demographics	3
3.2	Emerging Technologies and Trends.....	4
3.3	Environment.....	6
3.4	Climate Change and Hazards.....	7
3.5	Community Drivers	8
4	Significant Decisions	8
4.1	Significant Capital Expenditure Decisions	9
5	Funding Strategy	11
	Part 2: Activity Analysis and Assumptions.....	15
6	Water	15
6.1	Overview	15
6.2	Asset Condition and Risk	15
6.3	Critical Infrastructure Assets.....	15
6.4	Key Strategic Issues.....	16
6.5	Activity Funding Strategy	19
6.6	Levels of Service	20
6.7	Activity Summary	20
7	Wastewater	20
7.1	Overview	20
7.2	Asset Condition and Risk	21
7.3	Critical Infrastructure Assets.....	21
7.4	Key Strategic Issues.....	21
7.5	Activity Funding Strategy	23
7.6	Levels of Service	25
7.7	Activity Summary	25
8	Stormwater.....	25
8.1	Overview	25
8.2	Asset Condition and Risk	25
8.3	Critical Infrastructure Assets.....	26
8.4	Key Strategic Issues.....	26
8.5	Activity Funding Strategy	28
8.6	Levels of Service	29

8.7	Activity Summary	29
9	Transportation	29
9.1	Overview	29
9.2	Asset Condition and Risk	29
9.3	Critical Infrastructure Assets.....	29
9.4	Key Strategic Issues.....	30
9.5	Activity Funding Strategy	32
9.6	Other Significant or Major Capital Expenditure.....	33
9.7	Levels of Service	34
9.8	Activity Summary	34
10	Flood Protection	34
10.1	Overview	34
10.2	Asset Condition and Risk	34
10.3	Critical Infrastructure Assets.....	34
10.4	Key Strategic Issues.....	34
10.5	Activity Funding Strategy	36
10.6	Levels of Service	36
11	Solid Waste.....	37
11.1	Overview	37
11.2	Asset Condition and Risk	37
11.3	Critical Infrastructure Assets.....	37
11.4	Key Strategic Issues.....	37
11.5	Activity Funding Strategy	38
11.6	Levels of Service	38
11.7	Activity Summary	39
12	Parks and Recreation	39
12.1	Overview	39
12.2	Asset Condition and Risk	39
12.3	Critical Infrastructure Assets.....	39
12.4	Key Strategic Issues.....	39
12.5	Activity Funding Strategy	41
12.6	Levels of Service	41
13	Key Assumptions	43
	Appendix A: Asset Management System Objectives and Actions	45
	Appendix B: Levels of Service and Performance Measures	47

1 Introduction

1.1 Purpose and Scope

The purpose of an Infrastructure Strategy is to identify the significant infrastructure issues for Council over a 30-year management period, along with the principal options for managing those issues and the implications of those options.

While it is a technical document, often working through complex concepts, it supports the associated Consultation Document, the purpose of which is to communicate the key issues and concepts in a way that can be easily understood.

The Infrastructure Strategy provides a high-level tool for ensuring that Council's infrastructure is properly managed throughout its life cycle, and to ensure that the needs of current and future generations are met. This Strategy applies to the following infrastructure groups:

- Water
- Wastewater
- Stormwater
- Flood protection
- Roads and footpaths (Transportation)
- Solid waste
- Parks and recreation

Of note are solid waste and parks and recreation which, while not statutorily required, have been included due to the resources they consume and their contribution to community outcomes.

In accordance with Section 101B of the Local Government Act 2002 (the LGA), this Strategy sets out:

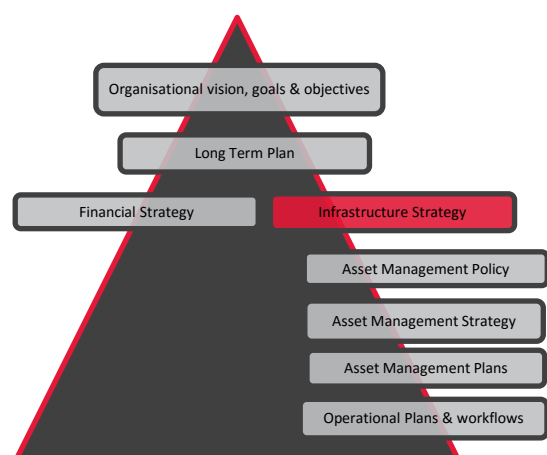
- How Council will manage infrastructure assets, considering the need for renewals, response to growth and maintaining Levels of Service. *[Sections 2 and 6 - 12]*
- The overall Financial Strategy to manage assets *[Section 5]*
- The significant decisions *[Section 4]*
- Overall assumptions relating to life cycle, demand and Levels of Service *[Sections 3 and 6 - 13]*
- Significant issues, options and responses associated with the long term management of Council's infrastructure *[Sections 2 - 4 and 6 - 12]*.

1.2 Strategic Framework

The Strategy is part of a suite of long, medium and short term strategies, plans and policies that contribute to the long term sustainable management of Council's infrastructure.

Along with the Financial Strategy, the Infrastructure Strategy is a key supporting document to Council's Consultation Document for the Long Term Plan 2018-2028 (LTP), sitting above the Asset Management System.

While the Infrastructure Strategy identifies the significant infrastructure issues over the 30-year horizon, Asset Management System documents guide not only how we produce Activity Management Plans (AMPs), but how we improve over time. Within these is the Asset Management Strategy which sets the policies, objectives and actions for Asset Management. These underpin the improvements associated with strategic issues identified within this document, and have been included in Appendix A.



1.3 Using this document

Part 1 of the Strategy outlines the Strategic Direction and Decisions of Council (including the Strategic Direction, Context, Significant Decisions and Funding Strategy). Part 2 provides the Activity Analysis and Assumptions underpinning Part 1. It is intended that Part 1 will provide the reader with a sound overview of the Strategy, with more detailed information available in Part 2 (and the supporting AMPs) if required.

Part 1: Strategic Direction and Decisions

2 Council's Strategy

While this Infrastructure Strategy is based on, and is a continuation of, the 'hold and maintain' approach underpinning Council's 2015-25 Long Term Plan, it is also shaped by the key strategic direction from Council's new community outcomes and feedback and direction provided through early engagement with the public. These have in turn resulted in the vision to be an attractive, vibrant, and thriving District.

Through these processes the following significant issues have been identified:

The need to continue focusing on core assets

To maintain existing levels of service, Council needs to ensure that the assets it already has are maintained and renewed to existing levels of service. Many are aged and worn, with some deteriorating faster than expected and others located underground, making it difficult to assess their condition accurately. In some areas, notably stormwater, renewals have historically been underfunded. Within the stormwater, wastewater and water networks (and to a lesser extent, parks and recreation facilities) insufficient information is available to plan proactively for, and prioritise, the maintenance and renewal of assets.

Whangarei is a growing District

Population and household growth has increased in the past three years. The 2017 Growth Model supporting these strategies shows a picture of continued population increase beyond what was predicted in the 2014 Growth Model. We therefore need to ensure infrastructure can meet this growing demand into the future.

Across the District there is an increased expectation of things to see and do

Our residents not only expect to have things to see and do, they expect them to be attractive, high quality, engaging and appropriate to our people and place. We call this 'adding amenity', a term that is often used in conjunction with the phrase, Sense of Place. Examples in the last three years include key amenity projects such as the addition of the Pocket Park to the very popular Hatea Loop. As a growing District, there is a greater expectation to see these types of projects throughout our urban environment and rural areas.

Growth and increasing expectations for amenity require a balance between funding for the maintenance and renewal of core assets. These issues also require Council to balance limited funding across competing priorities.

In adopting the 2015 Infrastructure Strategy, Council considered three options:

- **Deliver at current Levels of Service:** increase investment in core services through an initial step change in rates in year one of the 2015-25 LTP, followed by increases above inflation in the remaining years.
- **Delivering current Levels of Service without sufficient funding:** through a lesser rate increase beyond inflation, allowing some assets to run down and debt funding of capital expenditure.
- **Focus on meeting selected community expectations:** through focussing on necessities, increasing rates by inflation, focusing on core infrastructure and potentially reducing service levels.

While Council's preferred option remains to deliver current Levels of Service, through rates increases above inflation over the 10 years of the LTP, it is proposed to address issues identified since 2015 through the following enhancements:

- Increasing Council's self-imposed debt limits at inflation for the first 10 years. This will enable prioritised investment in renewals in the early years, while providing for growth and amenity projects.
- Prioritising spending on stormwater renewals.
- Including funding to grow and improve knowledge on assets and information systems to aid decision making on funding priorities.
- Reviewing the adequacy of infrastructure through processes supporting the National Policy Statement on Urban Development Capacity (NPS-UDC).
- Consolidating Parks and Recreation 'Sense of Place' funding into a dedicated programme primarily focused on cornerstone projects around Pohe Island, the Hatea Loop and the Blue Green Network.

3 Strategic Context

In determining the strategic direction of infrastructure management, it is necessary consider a range of matters, including:

- Growth and demographics – their influence on demand and the ability to pay for infrastructure services in the future
- Environment – how it will influence future infrastructure upgrades and enable them to meet new environmental demands and consent conditions
- Emerging technologies and trends – their influence on the issues and solutions for the management and provision of infrastructure
- Climate change and hazards – their influence on the design and location of infrastructure to help develop resilience
- Community drivers – how they influence Council's response to the aspirations of the Whangarei community, and its expected Levels of Service.

3.1 Growth and Demographics

Demand on the District's infrastructure is driven by growth in the permanent residential and business populations, as well as by the temporary spikes in population during holiday periods.

Growth in the permanent residential and business population has a sustained impact on all infrastructure services.

Council's challenge is to ensure that there is sufficient infrastructure capacity in areas of growth, or in areas where growth is planned or considered desirable, and that the community maintains the ability to fund increased and/or improved infrastructure.

3.1.1 Growth

Council's spatial pattern for growth is set through the 'Whangarei District Growth Strategy: Sustainable Futures 30/50'. While Council has historically produced an in-house growth model in support of this spatial pattern, in May 2017, Statistics New Zealand (SNZ) provided population projections in support of the NPS-UDC.

As Whangarei has been identified as 'high growth' under the NPS-UDC it has utilised the medium population projections from SNZ as the base for its 2017 Growth Model, with the following adjustments made to reflect known areas of higher growth within the District:

- **Marsden Point / Ruakaka:** has experienced higher than projected growth in the last five years in wastewater connections, a trend that is expected to continue with future subdivision growth and building consents. As a result, Council has adopted a higher growth projection for this area. Within this area, the Unit Business Floor Area has also been adjusted to recognize the impact of the existing floor area of the Marsden Point Oil Refinery on future projections.
- **Port Limeburners:** it is anticipated that the 100-hectare Port Nikau development will occur in the next 30-year period resulting in gradual growth of up to 3,000 people and 1,500 dwellings, by 2048.

As at 10 June	2018	2023	2028	2033	2038	2043	2048
Population	89,900	95,500	100,800	104,200	107,200	109,900	112,800
Total Dwellings	37,980	40,580	43,080	44,660	46,080	47,380	48,730
Business Floor Area (m²)	1,274,600	1,319,800	1,367,000	1,416,600	1,468,400	1,522,600	1,579,300

Table 3.1.1.1: Estimated Residential Population, total Dwellings and Business Floor Areas 2018-2048

Overall, the District's population is projected to exceed 100,000 people in the next ten years, with an average annual growth rate of 1.2% over the life of the LTP. By 2048, the total resident population is projected to be 112,800, although it is expected that the rate of population growth will slow from year 11 through 30, with the average annual growth rate remaining steady at just below 1%. Total dwellings in the District are forecast to increase from 37,980 in 2018 to 43,080 in 2028, resulting in an extra 5,100 dwellings, and averaging 510 additional dwellings per year.

The highest increases in population between 2018-2028 are expected to be in Marsden Point/Ruakaka, Port Limeburners, Waipu, Bream Bay and Te Hihi. Although most coastal areas are not identified as high growth areas, these areas do have seasonal variations in population.

3.1.2 Demographics

Whangarei District comprises the urban area (approximately 64% of the population), coastal settlements (14% of the population) and rural areas (22% of the population). The overall make-up of the District's population did not significantly change between the 2006 and the 2013 census data, although there are likely to have been changes since that time due to sustained growth in recent years.

The estimated resident population of the District is older than New Zealand overall, with more residents outside the 'working age' cohort (15-65 years).

It is estimated that within 10 years, the working-age group will make up approximately 56% of the population. Children will comprise 20% and seniors will make up 24%. During this time, the population aged 65-84 years will have increased by almost 5,900, or 38%. The population over the age of 85 years will have increased by almost 950, or 45%.

3.1.3 Growth and Demographics Response

The District is identified as a high growth area by the NPS-UDC. This high growth status requires, among other things, sufficient housing and business land development capacity, with that capacity having the infrastructure required to service it.

The updated Growth Model utilises the best available statistics, and has been prepared using SNZ modelling to be consistent with the NPS-UDC. Amendments to the Growth Model reflect known local issues and help to provide a more accurate model.

Although there will be a gradual increase in population, and a greater number of rateable residential dwellings, it is expected that there will be fewer people of working age and a gradual increase in retired permanent residents. The effect of this will be to increase the number of residents on fixed income, which may result in changes to the way people use some infrastructure, particularly parks and public transport.

To address these issues, Council has provided for the following:

- Servicing of growth as road transport links with Auckland improve
- Reviewing the 30/50 Growth Strategy as part of the requirements for a Development Strategy under the NPS-UDC
- Verifying growth models with confirmed data, particularly updated Census data, once available
- Ongoing consideration of the effect of an ageing population on parks and transport.

3.2 Emerging Technologies and Trends

The Infrastructure Strategy is a forward-looking document covering the next 30 years. Over this period the issues and solutions for the management and provision of infrastructure will change considerably. This will be driven by advances in technology and changes in the way we live and work. Over such a long horizon, it is difficult to predict future trends with certainty. However, Council is now beginning to see changes that will inform and influence its 30-year vision. This section captures those changes, along with some of the likely responses.

3.2.1 Emerging Technologies and Trends Strategic Context

Transport

The trend towards transport choice will continue as cycling and walking continue to grow in popularity for both recreation and commuting. This increased demand will require an appropriate response in the design and location of shared paths, walkways and cycleways, both on and off road.

As cities grow, so does the patronage and popularity of public transport. As our urban area develops, our public transport will need to respond to avoid congestion. Technology will also help the reliability and usability of public transport.

Technology will influence how we move around our District. Electric vehicles will reduce environmental effects through zero noise and air emissions. This will likely reduce reverse sensitivity issues (the impacts of new activities) with neighbouring properties, and improve public health and amenity.

Self-drive technology will enable a more efficient movement of private, public and freight vehicles, therefore making our transport system work better. This technology also has the potential to improve road user safety.

Water

Resilience (the capacity to endure and recover from shocks to the network) will be a continuing trend for our water supply. As our climate changes, and our population grows, the reliability of water provision to our communities and industries will be increasingly important. This will mean continual improvements to our infrastructure to meet demand. However, there will also be growing trends of water conservation and recycling.

Along with resilience of water quantity there will be an ongoing focus on quality from a health perspective. Technology will play a vital role in the monitoring and compliance.

Wastewater

Responding to growth with new infrastructure will be a key element for the future of wastewater infrastructure in our District. As knowledge and awareness of wastewater's effects on the natural environment improves, there will be an increasing focus on minimising harmful impacts from treatment and disposal.

The future treatment of wastewater also offers opportunities for the promotion of grey water recycling to reduce demand on the network. There are also opportunities to build on existing initiatives to generate energy from the wastewater treatment process and reuse end products.

Stormwater

The future of stormwater management will recognise and maximise multiple outcomes for our environment and communities. This includes reduced flooding and improved water quality and stream health. A key focus will be to integrate innovative stormwater solutions to help connect urban areas to our natural environment through the implementation of the Blue Green Network Strategy.

Water-Sensitive Design will play an important part in the management of stormwater. Natural systems and processes are increasingly appreciated by our community as a preferred way of reducing the negative impacts of stormwater in urban environments.

Solid Waste

The future focus will be to minimise the volume of waste we currently produce. This will build on the direction set in our Waste Minimisation Strategy. The promotion of minimisation and recycling is likely to be complemented by the actions of government and corporations, such as recent trends towards removing plastic bags from supermarkets and increased use of biodegradable materials.

However, there will be a continued need to manage the waste process, including landfill and its by-products, such as methane.

Parks and Recreation

The way we use our public spaces is changing. As we grow, we will likely experience decentralisation of parks and recreational infrastructure, or their placement in outlying rather than central parts of our District. This will require new land acquisition, but also reviewing how we use the land that we already own and how we provide for the increasing emergence of non-organised recreation.

A further trend is toward recognising streets as public space assets, and designing them so that they are better used by our communities.

Setting direction on these issues will be achieved through the proposed Recreation, Open Space and Streetscapes Strategies.

3.2.2 Emerging Technologies and Trends Strategic Response

Advances in technology, and changes in the way we live and work, have the potential to affect a wide range of Council assets. While it is difficult to predict future trends accurately and respond to them with certainty, there are steps that Council can take to ensure that it keeps up to speed with developing technologies and trends. To address this issue Council will:

- Consider the design and location of shared paths, walkways and cycleways to support multiple transportation options
- Maintain a "watching brief" on emerging technologies to understand trends and potential requirements
- Where possible, future proof the assets built today

- Plan for key emerging issues and trend through initiatives such as the development of proposed Recreation and Open Space and Streetscapes Strategies
- Look for opportunities to maximise outcomes for our environment and communities through the management of stormwater and the implementation of the Blue Green Network Strategy.

3.3 Environment

3.3.1 Environmental Regulation

The most direct effect of regulation on infrastructure is the consenting process. This process is driven by Regional and District Plans that implement the Regional Policy Statement (RPS) and National Environmental Standards.

The Northland RPS provides the environmental framework for the region and undergoes a full review every 10 years. With the last full review being completed in 2016, it is reasonable to assume that the RPS will be reviewed up to three times within the life of this Strategy.

While the RPS does not set consent conditions, there are clear objectives to improve the overall quality of coastal and fresh water, particularly in relation to micro-biological contamination. These objectives are reflected within the relevant Regional Plans. It is therefore reasonable to expect that, as consents are renewed, there will be greater emphasis on investing in improved water quality outcomes, treatment options, and better technology.

In addition, Council is subject to national regulation through legislation and standards.

3.3.2 Environmental Regulation Strategic Context

All infrastructure activities have assets that are subject to resource consents. Most consents are managed through the AMPs and the consenting process. However, consents that involve significant water takes, significant discharges or have the potential for substantive environmental impacts, are of strategic importance. Strategically important consents are associated with:

- Wastewater – treatment and discharge options, including land discharge and any ocean outfall
- Stormwater – treatment options at stormwater outlets
- Water – provisions for the take of water at low flow
- Flood Protection – Hikurangi Flood Management Scheme renewals
- Solid Waste – discharges from landfills and consents for ReSort and Purewa Landfill.

The timing for renewals of major consents is outlined in the table below:

Description	2018	2021	2024	2027	2030	2033	2036	2039	2042	2045	2048
Water	■			■	■	■	■	■			
Wastewater	■		■	■	■	■				■	
Stormwater		■	■		■	■		■	■	■	
Flood Protection											■
Solid Waste	■							■	■		

Table 3.2.2: Timing of Major Consent Renewals

Also of note over the life of this Strategy are the potential implications of changes to Drinking Water Standards, and the potential for fluoridation of water supply.

3.3.3 Environmental Regulation Strategic Response

Consent renewals may require upgrades of some wastewater treatment plants, installation of treatment devices on stormwater outfalls and the identification of additional alternative water sources where low flows are an issue. In addition, Council may be subject to national regulatory changes, particularly in the water activity. To address this issue Council will:

- Continue monitoring consent compliance, including long term performance and environmental impacts, so that future consent conditions can be negotiated with stakeholders and authorities based on sound information
- Plan on a staged installation of treatment devices for stormwater network outfalls
- Monitor potential changes to Drinking Water Standards and include strategic funding to respond where necessary.

3.4 Climate Change and Hazards

Climate change encompasses global warming and the associated changes in climate that result, including an increase in more extreme climate events such as floods, storms, cyclones and droughts. The Ministry for the Environment Climate Change projections for the Northland Region include:

- An increase in average temperature of between 0.7° – 1.1° Celsius by 2040
- Up to 75 additional days where temperatures exceed 25° Celsius by 2090
- An overall reduction in annual rainfall
- A similar number of ex-tropical cyclones, but these will be more severe resulting in greater damage and flooding.

Climate change is not expected to create new hazards that are not already being experienced. However, it is expected that the frequency and intensity of some hazards such as storm events (wind damage), flooding, coastal erosion and inundation by sea water surge will increase.

3.4.1 Climate Change and Hazards Strategic Context

The District is largely coastal in nature with the majority of residents and population centres located along the east coast. Whangarei City is located along an estuarine environment, with the Hatea River being tidal and at the centre of the City. There are numerous smaller coastal settlements, including Langs Beach, Ruakaka, Ngunguru and Tutukaka. These settlements are at risk of sea level rise in the long term and potential inundation by sea water as a result of storm surge.

The effect of climate change and hazards on Council's infrastructure over the next 30-year period, and beyond, is expected to include:

Drought

- An increase in peak demands for water, with more hot days per year. This has the potential to impact on water storage volumes.
- A reduction in water availability, including potentially greater restrictions on water takes where there are low-flow restrictions in place, and/or less water entering reservoirs and dams. This could have long term impacts on where and how the District sources its water supplies.

Flooding

- Increased damage to the road network, particularly where flooding arises from more intensive storm events, resulting in the reallocation of maintenance and repair funding.
- Stormwater networks reaching or exceeding capacity more regularly.
- A reduction in the economic benefit of the Hikurangi Swamp flood protection works as the capacity for which it is designed will be exceeded more often, resulting in more flooding and potential pressure to upgrade the scheme.

Sea-Level Rise and Coastal Inundation

- Increased damage to coastal assets, particularly wharves, jetties, pontoons and coastal protection works resulting from increased intensity of storm events and sea level rise.
- Loss of coastal reserve areas due to increased coastal erosion.

3.4.2 Climate Change and Hazards Strategic Response

Climate change has the potential to affect a wide range of Council assets across all the infrastructure activities. While the full impact of climate change will not become fully apparent for some time, infrastructure assets are long term, and new, replaced or upgraded assets will need to be designed and located to take account of potential hazards and climate change impacts. To address this issue Council will:

- Continue to incorporate the most up-to-date hazard and climate change data and information into the standards dictating the design of assets, and take account of that information when determining the location of some assets
- Develop a Climate Change Strategy to consider how we adapt to the impacts of climate change as a District, including overarching considerations to inform the design, location of and need for infrastructure.

3.5 Community Drivers

3.5.1 Community Drivers Strategic Context

Community Outcomes

Community outcomes guide everything that Council does, as a set of goals that the community has identified as being important. All seven activities contribute to at least one community outcome:

Outcome	Water	Wastewater	Stormwater	Transport	Flood	Solid Waste	Parks and Recreation
Efficient and resilient core services	High	High	High	High	Medium	Medium	Medium
Positive about the future	Medium	Medium	Medium	High			
Caring for the environment		High	High	Medium	Medium	High	Medium
Proud to be local				Medium		High	Medium

Table 3.5: Infrastructure Contribution to Community Outcomes

Levels of Service

A Level of Service is the quality of service for an Activity that Council expects to meet, or is targeting. The Level of Service describes what the community can expect from Council's infrastructure and activities and is a combination of:

- The quality of infrastructure provided by Council
- The standard to which infrastructure is maintained
- The services that assets, staff and contractors provide to the community.

LTP Levels of Service, and supporting performance measures, are provided in Appendix B. Council's overarching strategy is focussed on ensuring that Levels of Service identified in the LTP are maintained.

3.5.2 Community Drivers Strategic Response

Part 2 of this Infrastructure Strategy addresses strategic options and Council's anticipated response or choice of option required to maintain Levels of Service across the individual activities, given overall asset condition and the funding environment.

The anticipated responses to key issues, along with the renewals profile that makes up each Activity Funding Strategy, are targeted at maintaining current Levels of Service.

However, the one exception is the stormwater activity where Council has had to prioritise the funding of renewals to ensure the Levels of Service are maintained. To address this issue Council will:

- Allocate \$32 million of additional renewals funding in the first 10 years of the Strategy (\$1 million in year one increasing to \$5.5 million in year 10).

4 Significant Decisions

This Infrastructure Strategy also addresses significant infrastructure issues, assets and decisions. Significance is determined by Council's Significance and Engagement Policy, 2017.

The Policy deems a matter to be significant if, in Council's judgement, two or more of the following criteria / measures are met:

Criteria	Measure
Impact on Council's direction	Major and long-term
Change in Council's current level of service	Major and long-term
Level of public impact and/or interest	Major and District-wide, or Major for an identified community of interest
Impact on Council's capability (non-cost)	Major and long-term
Net financial cost/revenue of implementation, excluding any financial impact already included in a Long-term Plan / Annual Plan	Net Capital Expenditure >10% of Total Rates in year commenced. and/or Net Operating Expenditure >2.5% of Total Rates in year commenced

Table 4.0: Significance Criteria

4.1 Significant Capital Expenditure Decisions

4.1.1 Whau Valley Water Treatment Plant

While the Whau Valley Water Treatment Plant replacement is important to the community, the project has not received a high level of public interest, with only one submitter seeking to be heard through the consenting and designation stages. However, expenditure on the project is likely to meet one of the Policy criteria in the table above. Given the scale and importance of the project it was considered prudent to include it in this section.

Whau Valley Treatment Plant Renewal – Options		
Options	Implications	Alternatives
Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Risk of Plant failure Insufficient capacity for growth Does not comply with Building Act earthquake requirements Loss of investment and design already undertaken and land already purchased 	Use other treatment plants, which would result in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased operational cost High risk of water restrictions at peak periods.
Upgrade the existing plant	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Capacity cannot be extended with upgrades alone Insufficient room for delivery vehicles Will only achieve 67% compliance with Building Act Ongoing risk of hazardous substances 	Demolish the existing plant and rebuild on the same site. This alternative does not address the major site constraints. Implementing this option would also require the acquisition of some neighbouring land.
Build a new plant on a new site	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Addresses capacity issues Meets Building Act requirements Reduces risk to residential properties New site can be fit for purpose 	Construct a new plant on the existing site, and accept higher risk and potentially a lower Level of Service.

Most Likely Scenario – Replace the Whau Valley Treatment Plant on a new site

The Whau Valley Water Treatment Plant was originally constructed in 1953 and supplies potable (drinkable) water to the Whangarei urban area. The Treatment Plant is surrounded by residential dwellings and has the following constraints:

- The existing plant requires earthquake strengthening under the Building Act, but will only achieve 67% compliance
- There is no additional space available to construct a new plant alongside the existing plant
- There is insufficient access and manoeuvring room
- Storage and use of hazardous substances (chlorine gas) close to residential dwellings is a risk.

This project is currently at an advanced stage of the decision-making process.

Timing: 2018 - 2020

Estimated Uninflated Cost: \$21.3 million over a three-year period

4.1.2 Ruakaka Ocean Outfall

While scheduled to occur later in the Strategy, and as such subject to uncertainty around the impacts of growth, available capacity, timing and cost, a decision to proceed with the Ruakaka Ocean Outfall is likely to be significant due to the level of public interest and the net financial cost of implementation.

Ruakaka Ocean Wastewater Outfall – Options		
Options	Implications	Alternatives
No Upgrades	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Growth not catered for • Non-compliance with consent conditions • Loss of current investment in consent negotiations 	Use planning regulations and other mechanisms to slow growth in the Ruakaka area, resulting in loss of economic opportunity.
Land Disposal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • High cost of land • Appropriate land may not be available • New consenting requirements 	Construct a new ocean outfall as part of the overall upgrade of the Wastewater Treatment Plant.
Ocean Outfall	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Compliance with existing consent conditions • Allows for a staged upgrade within the current treatment and discharge framework • Provides for growth 	Use disposal onto land as the main medium for discharge. This could be undertaken in conjunction with a smaller ocean outfall, but overall costs would be higher.
Most Likely Scenario – Ruakaka Ocean Wastewater Outfall		
<p>The Ruakaka and One Tree Point area is expected to experience high growth in the foreseeable future. Growth is expected to result in a need for a discharge of 16,000m³ /day of treated wastewater. Given the volume, the land area required and the lack of suitable land disposal is not a feasible option.</p> <p>The most likely scenario is to undertake a staged upgrade of the Ruakaka Wastewater Treatment Plant to keep pace with growth in the interim, with a major investment in a new ocean outfall from 2038.</p> <p>Timing: from 2038</p> <p>Estimated Uninflated Cost: \$60 million (based on the current known information and technology).</p>		

4.1.3 Riverside Drive/ Onerahi Road

Upgrading Riverside Drive and Onerahi Road to meet the traffic increase from growth in the Whangarei Heads / Parua Bay / Onerahi areas is expected to have a high level of public interest as there will be few options for alternative routes whilst work is underway. While detailed design and costings are yet to be confirmed, the project may also meet the financial threshold to be included in this section.

Riverside Drive/ Onerahi Road – Options		
Options	Implications	Alternatives
Do Nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Increased congestion over time • Increased maintenance costs • Loss of economic productivity due to delays 	Undertaking a partial upgrade to three lanes, or introducing overtaking lanes will cause the same level of temporary disruption as four lanes, but will not have a long-term reduction in congestion.
Four Laning	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Temporary disruption during construction • Increased transport efficiency in the long term • Reduced congestion 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do nothing and maintain the road. This will result in increased maintenance costs resulting from more traffic movements over the same pavement, and will not reduce congestion. • Bypass – construct a bypass of Onerahi to provide alternative route for Onerahi Rd.
Partial Four Laning plus Bypass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Temporary disruption during construction • Increased transport efficiency in the long term • Reduced congestion • Potential cost due to unsuitable ground conditions encountered on bypass route 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do nothing and maintain the road. This will result in increased maintenance costs resulting from more traffic movements over the same pavement, and will not reduce congestion. • Four laning Riverside Dr and Onerahi Rd from Dave Culham roundabout to Onerahi roundabout.
Most Likely Scenario – further investigate options for road widening and/or a bypass		

Riverside Drive/ Onerahi Road – Options

Projected high growth in the Whangarei Heads area is expected to trigger a programme of works to meet the access needs of these communities. Transport planning indicates a reduction in the Level of Service provided on the Riverside Dr/ Onerahi Rd route, from the Dave Culham Rd roundabout, particularly during peak commuter periods.

Options for road widening, and/or a bypass route of Onerahi have been investigated in these early stages but confirmation of the options and project details will occur closer to the time and will be subject to the realisation of the new growth projections.

In addition to the roading upgrades, Council intends to continue to invest in the walking and cycling connection to Onerahi.

Timing: 2024 - 28

Estimated Uninflated Cost: \$20 million

5 Funding Strategy

Whangarei District Council currently owns a wide range of assets that deliver the seven infrastructure Activities. These assets range from in-ground pipes, pumping stations and treatment plants to roads, parks and recreational facilities. The long term management of Council's infrastructure is funded through a combination of community rates (general and targeted rates), Council borrowing (debt) and returns on investments.

In developing the 2015 Infrastructure Strategy, Council considered three primary options for addressing issues:

- Deliver at current Levels of Service
- Deliver current Levels of Service without sufficient funding
- Focus on meeting only selected community expectations.

However, growth and increasing expectations for amenity have emerged as strategic issues since the last Strategy. These, along with increased information around the backlog of stormwater renewals, mean there is competition for funding.

As a result, Council considered a fourth option in the development of this Strategy, 'to deliver at current levels of service while meeting increased amenity expectations and growth pressure'. The four options are summarised as follows:

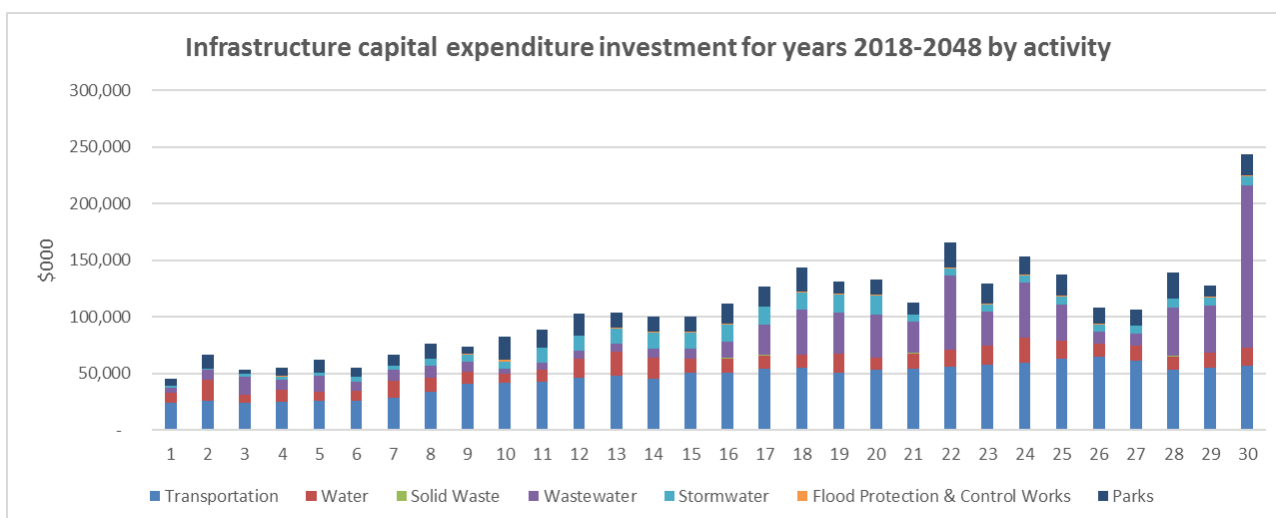
	Option	This option broadly involves	Reasons
1	Deliver at current level of service	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Increasing total rates beyond inflation for the first 10 years with debt remaining relatively static 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Meets community expectations • Enables Council to continue with sustainable and prudent financial position • Asset condition better maintained
2	Deliver current Levels of Service without sufficient funding	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Increasing total rates-beyond inflation, but to a lesser extent • Allowing some assets to run down 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Overall Levels of Service would drop • Increases the potential for inter-generational inequity with future generations paying for a lack of funding now • Greater long term cost
3	Meeting selected community expectations, focusing on necessities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Increasing real rates by inflation only • Focus spending on core infrastructure like roads, water and waste • Reduce spending on community initiatives 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Levels of Service will reduce, particularly in recreational areas • Whangarei District will become less desirable to live and work in • Potential increased use of targeted rates • Long term cost implications

	Option	This option broadly involves	Reasons
4	Deliver at current levels of service while meeting increased amenity expectations and growth pressure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increasing total rates by inflation plus 2% for the first 10 years Increasing debt by inflation for the first 10 years 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Provides for required renewals over the life of the Strategy Prioritises stormwater renewals to maintain Levels of Service Provides for improved information on assets Meets community expectations for increased amenity Provides for growth projects.

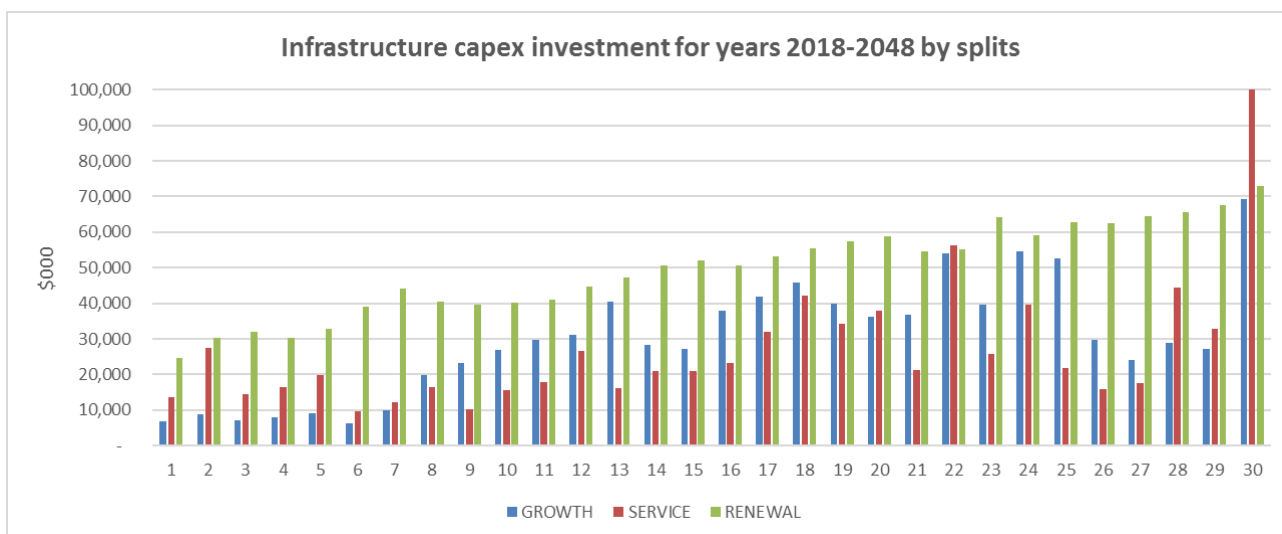
When considered against the activity analysis in Part 2 of this Strategy, Council's preferred option is to deliver at current Levels of Service. This option is considered to meet the community's increased amenity expectations (as indicated in the feedback received from early consultation) while addressing pressure from growth.

In modelling this option, Council has used the LTP budget for years 1 – 10, with years 11 – 30 coming from programmes and projects identified within AMPS. This ensures that any projects not included within the 10 years of the LTP are considered over the 30-year life of the Strategy.

Over the 30 years, this option results in the following capex (capital expenditure) profile:

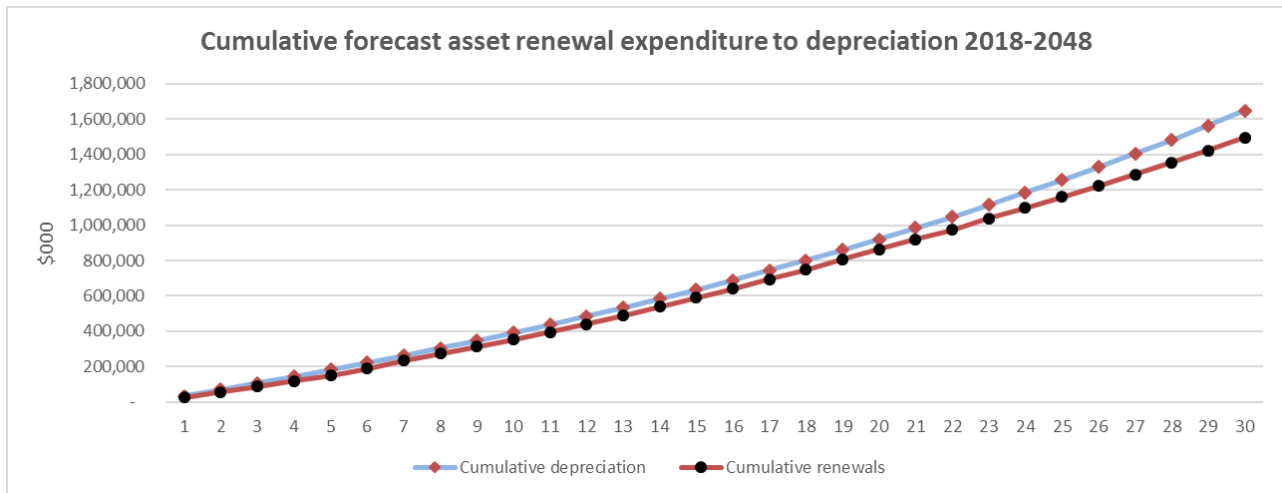


As seen in the graph below, when split by type a strong investment in renewals is shown throughout the life of the Strategy, which is balanced against growth and Level of Service projects. Of note are a number of 'spikes' across the life of the Strategy, where growth or Level of Service projects are required to meet anticipated demand.

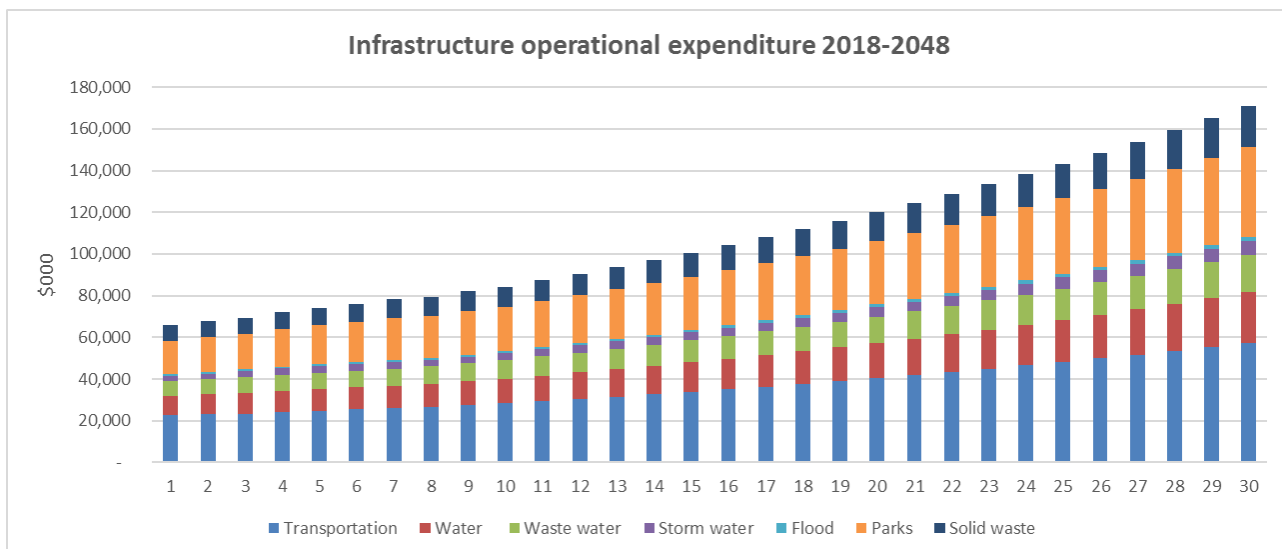


When viewed cumulatively, the investment in renewals is also evident, with renewals to depreciation (devaluation of an asset due to age, wear and tear) at over 90% over the life of the Strategy. By value,

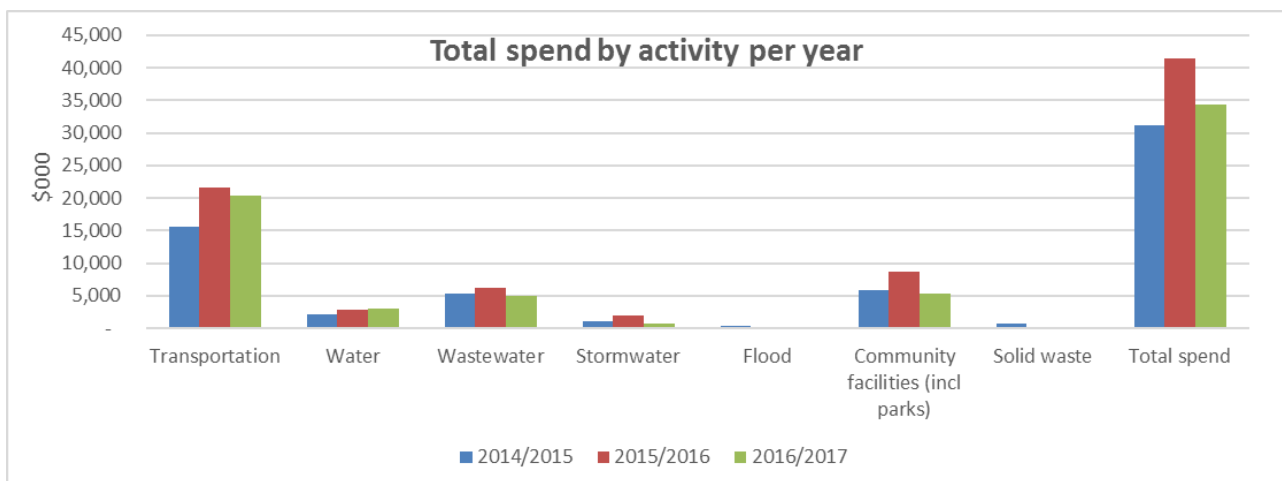
material departures from this trend occur in transportation (where asset renewals are based on information on the asset's actual condition) and wastewater (where modelling will be reviewed and validated), both of which are discussed in Part 2 of this report.



The opex (operational expenditure) trend over the 30-year period shows a corresponding increase in the funding available to maintain the assets that Council has. Of particular note through this modelling round is inclusion of consequential opex (opex Council requires to fund and maintain assets from projects).



Council's delivery on the Strategy is driven, in part, by its ability resource the capex programme with skilled staff and contractors. In considering this risk Council has compared the capex programme to expenditure in previous years, as seen below.



The first three years of the Strategy include funding for the upgrade of the Whau Valley Treatment Plant, a large renewal project in the advanced stages of planning. When Whau Valley funding is removed, the 2018 budget of \$ 37.4 million is comparable to the 2016 spend of \$34.3 million and below the 2015 spend of \$41.4 million. The capex programme then progressively builds in the first 10 years, providing both Council and the market time to build capacity to deliver the programme.

The above Funding Strategy results in Council funding identified asset management requirements over the 30-year life of the Infrastructure Strategy (please note, full financial analysis for the first 10 years of this Strategy is provided in the corresponding Financial Strategy).

Part 2: Activity Analysis and Assumptions

6 Water

6.1 Overview

The water activity covers the collection of raw water and the treatment and distribution of water to the community. Assets include water storage facilities, dams and water tanks, as well as treatment plants and pipelines. Water has:

- 45 reservoirs
- Nine water sources
- Seven treatment plants
- 763 km reticulation network
- 26,100 metered customers
- \$350 million optimised replacement cost

6.2 Asset Condition and Risk

Condition assessment of above ground assets is based on physical inspection. As a result, Council has sound data on dams, reservoirs, buildings and other above-ground assets. Underground assets, such as water pipelines, are more difficult to assess as detailed CCTV imaging is not possible. Pipeline condition assessment is therefore primarily age-based, coupled with sampling of failed or replaced pipe.

Based on current information and age, the total kilometres of distribution pipes (including mains, distribution and trunk) requiring replacement will increase from year 10 with:

- Most critical trunk mains approaching end of life
- Other pipelines at approximately half of expected life.

It is noted that the failure of a water main does not generally result in environmental harm, but may have a short term localised impact on the community. As such, the actual condition of pipelines does not give rise to any strategic risk, provided there is ongoing resource and funding to maintain the projected renewals programme.

Technology, electronics and mechanical assets like pumps and valves are increasingly dated, the Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition (SCADA) monitoring system being a good example. Older technology and electronics increase the risk of failure and non-compliance with Drinking Water Standards, but also of incompatibility with newer technology. Mechanical and electronic equipment is generally run until it fails as the overall lifespan is relatively short and improvements in technology are rapid.

Asset Condition	Risk / Implication
Aged Pipeline	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • High rate of replacement required in years 10 – 30 • Requirement to factor age and condition assessments into the long term renewals programme
Some Outdated Materials	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Repairs not practicable due to incompatibility of materials • Extending lifecycle of asset more difficult • Increased replacements as repairs are less feasible
Some Obsolete Technology	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Expensive, unplanned replacement and upgrade costs from failures • Inability to prove water is safe • Reliance on institutional knowledge to keep assets functioning

6.3 Critical Infrastructure Assets

Site	Resilience Strategy
Whau Valley Dam WS	The two major water supply areas, Whangarei City and Bream Bay, are principally supplied by Whau Valley Dam and Wilsons Dam.
Wilsons Dam WS	
Maunu Springs WS	All major water supply areas are backed up by alternative water sources, with additional reservoirs providing a two-day buffer for 95% of water customers.
Poroti Springs WS	
Ruakaka WTP	Mangapai and Maungakaramea water supply areas would be supplied by tanker in the event of a major failure.
Whau Valley WTP	
	Water treatment plants are in multiple locations to reduce the risk of multiple failure from a single event.

Site	Resilience Strategy
Ruddells WTP	All water treatment plants include contingencies in the event of failure, including either generators or mobile generators that can be connected in the event of power failure. The Ruakaka Water Treatment Plant provides treated water to the Marsden Point Oil Refinery, which is a nationally significant asset. While there is private storage onsite that provides for continuity and back-up, loss of supply for a period of six hours or more could result in progressive Refinery shut-downs. Council would work closely with the Refinery to restore supply as a priority. The Whangarei Base Hospital has a private reservoir directly available to it, which provides for continuity and back-up with up to two days' storage.
Poroti WTP	
Ahuroa WTP	
Taroa Street PS	All pump stations are fitted with back-up and standby pumps, and the raw water pump stations have generators installed in the event of power failure.
Kamo PS	
Flygers Road PS	
Fairway Drive PS	

6.4 Key Strategic Issues

Issue	Options	Implications
Information available is insufficient for proactive management of assets	Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Failure to maximise expenditure decisions Increased costs as renewal programme may not be based on accurate information Increased potential for unexpected failure of network
	Rely on modelling only	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Modelling alone may over- or under-state asset condition and capacity Asset modelling relies on the best information available at the time, which may be incomplete Increased long term cost
	Fund asset data and systems improvement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The accuracy of models improves as data is collected Reduced cost as maintenance and renewal expenditure is prioritised based on best available information Provides baseline information for long term planning

Commentary and Anticipated Response:

There are limitations on historic information. Council prefers to extend and verify the information currently available in the asset database so that it can be better used for proactive management of assets. To address this issue Council will:

- Undertake a data improvement/validation programme
- Increase funding for condition assessments and modelling on network assets
- While not a factor in the adequacy of data, Council will also fund the upgrade or replacement of the Asset Management Information System (AMIS), which is now unsupported (assistance is no longer available from the manufacturer).

Issue	Options	Implications
Ageing water reticulation pipes are in poor condition, with many older pipelines constructed from out of date	Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ongoing deterioration and failure of the water supply network Increasing water lost as leakage Inability to deliver an appropriate Level of Service

Issue	Options	Implications
materials such as asbestos cement	Maintain existing pipes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased difficulty and cost of repair Some materials may not be repairable due to unavailability of older materials Leakage and increased cost Reduction in Levels of Service
	Upgrade pipes using new materials	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Extends uniformity of network pipelines Ability to use “fit for purpose” materials Lower long term maintenance costs More reliable water supply network Maintains Levels of Service

Commentary and Anticipated Response:

The remaining alkathene and galvanised steel rider mains are operating past their predicted life and are in poor condition, with leakage and breakage rates that directly contribute to higher than desirable unaccounted for water figures and maintenance costs. Many of the distribution mains are made of asbestos cement and may be nearing the end of their predicted life. Older cast iron pipes in residential areas become severely encrusted inside and several cannot meet fire-flow requirements (sufficient flow for use by the fire service in the event of a fire). Council prefers to upgrade distribution pipes as they start to fail using new, “fit for purpose”, materials. To address this issue Council will:

- Undertake condition assessments as part of its renewal strategy, particularly for older assets
- Continue a programme of operating a lower water pressure in some areas to reduce strain on ageing pipes and reduced leakage, until replacement can be implemented
- Upgrade pipes using new materials, where required.

Issue	Options	Implications
Water treatment plants, particularly the Whau Valley Plant, require continuous upgrading and ongoing expenditure to ensure production and maintain water quality standards	Run to failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased maintenance costs High risk of failure despite redundancies Potential inability to meet future demand and water quality standards Potential decrease in Levels of Service for some plants
	Improve maintenance and renewal programme and upgrade, where appropriate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Extends useful life Increased costs over time Upgrades alone may not allow a plant to meet increased demand Does not address site constraints
	Upgrade to use technology / best practice as it becomes available and replace, where appropriate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Maintenance and upgrade extends useful life More cost-effective option where plant is reaching the end of useful life, or upgrade costs are becoming untenable Full replacement enables site constraints to be addressed

Commentary and Anticipated Response:

There are seven water treatment plants in the District. To ensure a safe, reliable water supply for the community, Council's preferred option is to upgrade and/or replace them, as required. To address this issue Council will:

- Replace the Whau Valley Treatment Plant, using an alternative site (considered in more detail under Section 4)
- Upgrade treatment plants at Poroti Springs to support the current and new system in times of water shortage
- Continue with a programme of maintenance and renewal for other water treatment plants
- Consider further upgrades/replacements over the life of the Strategy to optimise performance and plant life and minimise.

Issue	Options	Implications
Some critical pumps and drives have exceeded their design life and are now due	Run to failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Additional long term cost Failure of critical pumps and drives Increased risk to the delivery of flow and pressure Reduction in Level of Service

Issue	Options	Implications
for either replacement or refurbishment	Effective maintenance regime	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased backlog of renewals and replacements Additional long term costs
	Maintain, renew and upgrade before failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased reliability of critical assets Maintains Level of Service Ability to address growth issues.

Commentary and Anticipated Response:

Council prefers to manage critical equipment and reticulation assets through a combination of preventative maintenance, condition assessment and planned renewal programmes. To address this issue Council will:

- Undertake condition assessments as part of business as usual
- Undertake renewals as part of a plant upgrade or planned minor projects
- Replace electrical and control assets as they fail.

Issue	Options	Implications
Requirements for improved Drinking Water Standards, monitoring and/or fluoridation, may increase costs	Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Changing requirements may result in unplanned expenditure Non-compliance may result in prosecution
	Monitor changes and respond as required	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Measured and timely response to changes Active participation in any review of Standards Level of Service maintained over time
	Anticipate changes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Potential for expenditure where not required Anticipated response may not address changes Potential to achieve higher Levels of Service

Commentary and Anticipated Response:

Water standards and monitoring requirements are expected to become more stringent over time, particularly following the 2016 Havelock North gastroenteritis outbreak. There is also an ongoing national debate regarding fluoridation. Council prefers to monitor changes and respond to these issues as necessary. To address this issue Council will:

- Include some strategic funding to comply with potential changes to drinking water standards
- Not undertake fluoridation unless desired by the community, or required
- Seek subsidies to off-set the costs of compliance, where available.

Issue	Options	Implications
Sanitary assessments as required by the LGA have not been undertaken for some time	Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Does not meet Council's obligations under the LGA Risk of prosecution
	Meet minimum requirements of the LGA	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Meets requirements of LGA Focusses on key growth areas and areas with high seasonal visitors Informs future LTP processes and allows for investment in infrastructure, based on need.

Commentary and Anticipated Response:

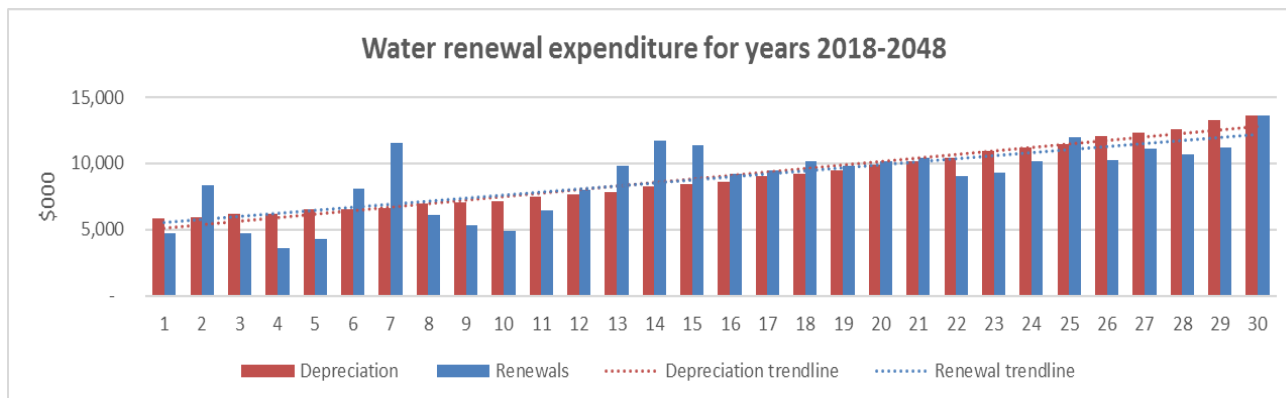
Sanitary assessments help to understand the existing water supply provisions and their effectiveness. Sanitary assessments have not been undertaken and/or updated in communities such as Ngunguru, Tutukaka, Matapouri and other coastal areas that have high fluctuations in seasonal populations. Council prefers to undertake sanitary assessments in areas of high growth and seasonal populations. To address this issue Council will:

- Meet its obligations under the LGA with respect to sanitary assessments for smaller communities and coastal communities
- Focus on those communities that are experiencing growth or seasonal pressures
- Consider the outputs of sanitary assessments in the 2021-2031 Long Term Plan.

6.5 Activity Funding Strategy

6.5.1 Renewals

The water renewals profile (below) shows the budgeted renewals for years 1-10 of the Strategy relative to depreciation. Depreciation is then forecast for years 11 – 30 with renewal requirements identified through the AMP also being forecast over that period. In doing so, the graph gives the reader an understanding of the required renewal budget relative to depreciation over the life of the Strategy.



In preparing the renewals profile for the water activity, a range of technical information and asset life data has been considered. These detailed assumptions and parameters are contained within the AMP. For the first 10 years, renewal decisions are based on the known condition of the assets. Beyond the 10-year timeframe, they are based on the age of the asset, in accordance with information and assumptions in the AMP.

While expenditure on renewals is relatively high in the early years of the Strategy due to the replacement and upgrade of the Whau Valley Treatment Plant, Council has diverted some funding from reticulation renewals (which can be managed to minimise the event/impact of failure) to replace high risk SCADA technology.

Other notable renewals over the first 10 years of the Strategy include the Reservoir and Reticulation Renewal programmes and the Otaika Reticulation and Trunk Renewals in years six and seven. Over the life of the Strategy, projected renewals closely track depreciation at 99%.

When projected beyond 30 years, there were no significant bow-waves (when a number of assets reach the end of their usable lives at the same time) in the water renewal profile.

6.5.2 Other Significant or Major Capital Expenditure

Over the life of the Strategy, water has one potentially significant project, the Whau Valley Treatment Plant, which is covered under Section 4, and the following major projects (excluding programmes) where nonrenewal expenditure exceeds 10% of the total capital for the activity in any year of delivery

Major Capital Expenditure								
Description	2018 / 23	2023 / 28	2028 / 33	2033 / 38	2038 / 43	2043 / 48	Key Driver	Uninflated Cost (\$m)
Wairoa River Water Source and Poroti WTP Upgrade							LOS	13.2
Waipu Reservoir - Additional Capacity							LOS	1.1
Kamo Additional Reservoir (Dip Rd)							LOS	2
Vinegar Hill Trunk Main Upgrade							Growth	1.3
Whau Valley Dam Chimney Drain							LOS	2.6
Three Mile Bush Reservoir							LOS	2
Sergeant Hill Reservoir and Pipework							Growth	1.9
Onerahi Reservoir - Extra Capacity							Growth	1.8
Ahuroa Water Treatment Plant - Upgrade							Growth	8.5
Ruakaka Reservoirs – Extra Capacity							Growth	2.4

Major Capital Expenditure								
Glenbervie Mains Extension, Reservoir and Land							Growth	5.6
Ngunguru Reservoir, Trunkmain and Reticulation							Growth	12.1
Port Marsden Highway Trunk Main Extension							Growth	4
Urquharts Bay Reservoir and Main to Ocean Beach							Growth	1.8
Maunu Reservoir							Growth	1.9
Parua Bay Reservoir Additional capacity							Growth	1.1
Hikurangi Reservoir							Growth	1.7
WTP Water Quality Compliance Upgrades							LOS	4
Langs Reservoir							Growth	1.4

6.6 Levels of Service

The water activity has the following Levels of Service which are supported by performance measures included in Appendix B:

- We provide safe, high-quality drinking water to all our customers
- The water supplied is continuous and is adequate for customers' use
- In times of emergency there is adequate water supply available.
- We manage the water supply system in a sustainable way that also caters for growth

While the allocated funding will enable Levels of Service to be maintained over the life of this Strategy, key challenges faced relate to:

- Loss of data through electronic or technological failure (i.e. SCADA)
- Continuity of supply, particularly in the ability to replace pump stations
- Maintaining or upgrading security to avoid wilful damage or contamination
- Compliance with Drinking Water Standards.

To address these issues Council will prioritise funding on SCADA, supply assets and security to reduce risk and will monitor/respond to changes in Drinking Water Standards.

6.7 Activity Summary

Within the water activity the need to maintain or replace ageing assets, including the information required to make the best decisions on them, is a key issue for consideration as part of the overarching strategy.

The impact of changing standards and regulatory requirements are also of note and will be considered as part of the broader Strategic Context under Section 3 of this Strategy.

The Whau Valley Treatment Plant replacement has been identified as a potentially Significant Project under Section 4 of this Strategy.

7 Wastewater

7.1 Overview

The wastewater activity incorporates facilities that collect, treat and discharge wastewater. The main gravity network in Whangarei has been constructed in various stages since 1910, with some pump stations and rising mains exceeding 60 years in age. Wastewater has:

- 32,279 connections (including commercial pan charges)
- 623 km of main pipelines
- 225 km of service lines
- 151 pump stations (excluding household pressure units)
- Nine treatment plants
- \$374 million optimised replacement cost

7.2 Asset Condition and Risk

Condition predictions for underground gravity mains and service lines are based on physical inspection of approximately 20% of the network, including a large portion of Tikipunga and all of Hikurangi. The physical inspection process, which includes the use of historic data, has identified 12km of in-service wastewater mains that are currently in a failure condition and require renewal.

The survival model, (which estimates the expected time until infrastructure failure) created from this data recognises natural variations in asset life, and provides a more robust statistical estimate of useful life than “nameplate” assumptions (the life given to an asset by its manufacturer). The data indicates that, while some assets will survive beyond their “nameplate” life, others will become unserviceable before that.

While supported by statistical analysis, further physical inspection is required to confirm condition and improve the accuracy of the model. Validation of the model will also assist any future analysis of useful life.

Asset Condition	Risk / Implication
Aged pipeline	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> High rate of replacement required where assets fail early Higher risk of failure and environmental harm Requirement to factor age into long term renewals programme
Outdated or poor materials	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some materials are deteriorating faster than expected, therefore requiring earlier renewal
Modelling	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Renewal programme is based on condition modelling Further verification of the current condition modelling through additional physical inspections will enable refinement of the renewals programme, over time

7.3 Critical Infrastructure Assets

Site	Resilience Strategy
Whangarei WWTP	The Whangarei Wastewater Treatment Plant treats all wastewater produced by Whangarei City. Complete failure of the plant would result in untreated discharge to Whangarei Harbour. To minimise the risk the plant has a range of contingencies in place, including equipment redundancies.
Onerahi PS	In the event of pump station failure, particularly at the Okara Park Pump Station, raw sewage could be discharged to Whangarei Harbour. To minimise this risk, pump stations are equipped for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> back-up/plug-in generators to mitigate against power failure; or multiple stand-by pumps in case of pump failure; and/or telemetry alarm systems to notify against failures. In addition, there are storage reservoirs and treatment at Hatea and Tarewa Park (under construction), along with storage at Parua Bay. Most pump stations have four-hours' storage capacity.
Okara Park PS	
Robert Street PS	
Hatea Road PS	
Waverly Street PS	
Otaika PS	
Kioreroa Road PS	
Trunk Gravity Main – Okara Park	The condition of this gravity main has recently been assessed as good, and it is monitored regularly.
Okara Park PS to Whangarei WWTP rising main	This rising main is the main pipe to the Whangarei Treatment Plant and has redundancy for part of its capacity.

7.4 Key Strategic Issues

Issue	Options	Implications
Information available is insufficient for proactive management of assets	Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Failure to maximise expenditure decisions Increased costs as renewal programme may not be based on accurate information Increased unexpected failure of network
	Rely on modelling only	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Modelling alone may over- or under- state asset condition and capacity Asset modelling relies on the best information available at the time, which may be incomplete Increased long-term cost

Issue	Options	Implications
	Fund asset data and systems improvement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The accuracy of the model improves as data is collected Reduced cost as maintenance and renewal expenditure is prioritised based on best available information Provides baseline information for long term planning.

Commentary and Anticipated Response:

There are limitations on historic data relating to asset location, condition and usage. Council prefers to extend and verify the information currently available in the asset database so that it can be better used for proactive asset management purposes. To address this issue Council will:

- Undertake a data improvement/validation programme
- Increase funding for condition assessments and modelling on network assets
- While not a factor in the adequacy of data, Council will also fund the upgrade or replacement of the Asset Management Information System (AMIS), which is currently unsupported

Issue	Options	Implications
The Discharge Consent for the Whangarei Wastewater Treatment Plant expires in 2021. New water quality standards and environmental regulations may result in new consent conditions that are more stringent than current conditions	Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Consent renewal remains live, but the outcome remains uncertain Potential that a significant upgrade to the treatment plant is still required Understanding of risk is not refined over time
	Monitor / model current discharges and negotiate consent conditions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Provides an accurate, evidence-based, approach to consent renewal Cost to community can be measured against environmental benefits The risk can be well understood and minimised, with Council able to proactively respond to future upgrade requirements
	Plan an upgrade of the treatment plant in anticipation of consent	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Potential loss of planning investment Potential cost of up to \$40 million to install a treatment plant that may not be required.

Commentary and Anticipated Response:

The Whangarei Wastewater Discharge Consent currently allows for treated wastewater to be discharged to Whangarei Harbour. Consent renewal may result in changes to discharge quality conditions, resulting in the need to upgrade the existing treatment plant. Any changes to consent conditions are currently unknown, but could result in the need for minor upgrades to the Plant. In a worst-case scenario (low-med risk), Council could be required to install a new treatment plant which could cost \$40 million. To address this issue Council will:

- Undertake an extensive monitoring programme of the existing discharge levels
- Proactively manage the issue with Northland Regional Council (and other stakeholders), including making submissions on Regional Plans, where appropriate.

Issue	Options	Implications
Wastewater assets subject to early failure require replacement	Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ongoing deterioration and failure of the wastewater network More expensive reactive maintenance Inability to deliver Level of Service
	Continue with renewals and update materials	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ability to use better "fit for purpose" materials Lower long term maintenance costs More reliable network Maintains Levels of Service

Issue	Options	Implications
-------	---------	--------------

Commentary and Anticipated Response:

Council prefers to continue a renewals programme that replaces older materials with “fit for purpose” modern materials, based on physical condition assessments. To address this issue Council will:

- Continue to undertake a renewals programme based on physical condition assessment and modelling
- Increase physical condition assessments
- Identify the causes of faster than expected asset deterioration.

Issue	Options	Implications
Sanitary assessments as required under the LGA have not been undertaken for some time	Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Does not meet Council's obligations under the LGA • Risk of prosecution
	Meet minimum requirements of LGA	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Meets requirements of LGA • Focusses on key growth areas and areas with high seasonal visitors • Informs future LTP processes and allows for investment in infrastructure based on need

Commentary and Anticipated Response:

The need for sewerage schemes in communities such as Maungatapere, Maungakarama, Matapouri and other coastal areas that have high fluctuations in seasonal populations is not well understood. Sanitary assessments help understand the existing wastewater provisions and effectiveness to the community. Council prefers to undertake sanitary assessments in areas that indicate growth, as well as those areas that have high seasonal populations. To address this issue Council will:

- Include indicative costings in the Strategy where information is available
- Meet its obligations under the LGA with respect to sanitary assessments for smaller communities and coastal communities, with an emphasis on those communities that are experiencing growth or seasonal pressures
- Consider the outputs of sanitary assessments, and confirm funding requirements, in future planning rounds.

Issue	Options	Implications
There is potential for greater than predicted growth in the Ruakaka area, which may bring forward required upgrades, including the need for an Ocean Outfall	Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Does not provide for growth • Potential effects on the environment and community from poor quality discharges • Unable to comply with consent conditions
	Staged upgrades	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Provides for growth, without pre-empting that growth • Ensures consent and regulatory compliance
	Anticipate growth with full upgrade	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Does not allow for uncertainty in growth models • Cost is not spread over time.

Commentary and Anticipated Response:

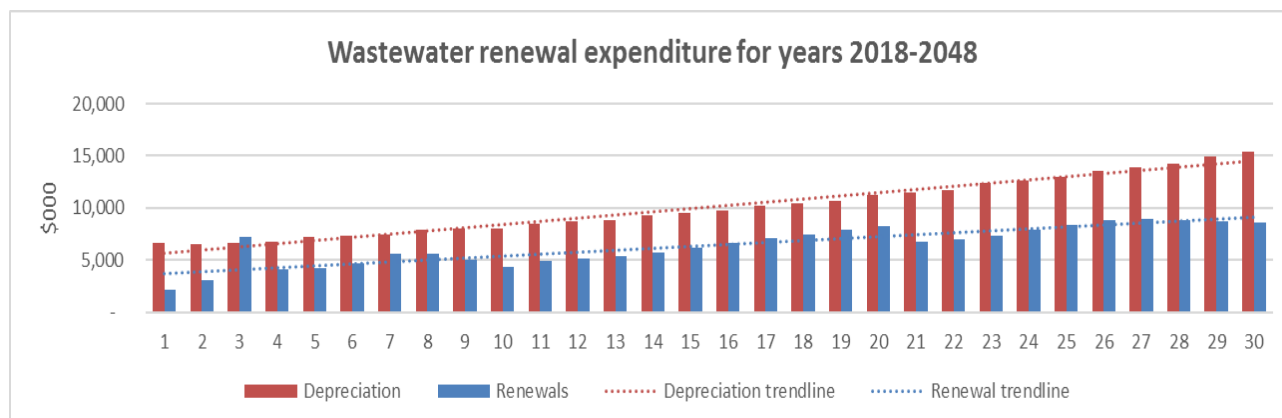
Council has a current consent to construct a new ocean outfall at Ruakaka as part of a wider upgrade of the treatment plant. As wastewater flow increases, there are several trigger levels, where staged upgrades will occur over time, with the full upgrade and outfall currently planned for 2038. There is a risk that growth in the Ruakaka area will result in planned upgrades being brought forward to an earlier date. To address this issue Council will:

- Monitor growth and wastewater flows at the current Ruakaka Waste Water Treatment Plant
- Undertake staged upgrades as required.

7.5 Activity Funding Strategy

7.5.1 Renewal Profile

The wastewater renewals profile below shows the budgeted renewals for years 1-10 of the Strategy relative to depreciation. Depreciation is then forecast for years 11 – 30 with renewal requirements identified through the AMP also being forecast over that period. In doing so, the graph gives the reader an understanding of the required renewal budget relative to depreciation over the life of the Strategy.



In preparing the renewals profile for wastewater, a range of technical information and asset life data has been considered, detailed assumptions and parameters are contained within the AMP. Broadly speaking, the assumption is that renewal requirements will be based on the Council's Asset Survival Model, which uses historical CCTV information to estimate the proportion of assets that survive to a given age (and, by extension, the proportion of assets that will fail at a given age).

Expenditure on renewals is relatively steady in the early years of the Strategy, increasing from just over \$2 million in year one to approximately \$4 million in year 10. The majority of this spend is on wastewater treatment plant and network renewals. Over the life of the Strategy, the gap between renewals funding and depreciation widens, with renewals eventually making up 63% of depreciation.

As indicated above, the profile of renewals replacement is largely driven by the findings of the Asset Survival Model, which has been used to prioritise renewals funding. Further physical inspection is required to the confirm condition of the asset and improve the accuracy of the model. Validation of the model will assist in refining future renewals priorities and in analysing an asset's useful life.

When projected beyond 30 years there were no significant bow-waves identified in the wastewater renewal profile.

7.5.2 Other Significant or Major Capital Expenditure

Over the life of the Strategy, wastewater has one potentially significant project, the Ruakaka Ocean Outfall, which is covered in detail under Section 4, and the following major projects (excluding programmes) where nonrenewal expenditure exceeds 10% of the total capital for the activity in any year of delivery:

Major Capital Expenditure								
Description	2018 / 23	2023 / 28	2028 / 33	2033 / 38	2038 / 43	2043 / 48	Key Driver	Uninflated Cost (\$m)
Waipu Cove/Langs Beach network							Growth	10.65
Waipu WWTP Upgrade								1.35
Te Hape Sewer Extension								2.5
Ruakaka Wastewater Treatment Plant Upgrade							Growth	12.6
One Tree Point-Ruakaka Wastewater Network-Upgrades								2
Whangarei Heads Sewerage System Upgrade							LOS	9.1
Whangarei WWTP Odour Control							LOS	3.7
Maunu sewer capacity increase							Growth/LOS	4.2
Tutukaka Wastewater System Upgrades							LOS	13.04
Kamo wastewater system capacity upgrades							LOS	18.76
Marsden/Ruakaka wastewater upgrades							LOS	37.75
Hikurangi wastewater upgrades							LOS	9.9
Parua Bay wastewater upgrades							LOS	7.62

Major Capital Expenditure								
Waipu wastewater upgrades							LOS	19.23
Oakura wastewater upgrades							LOS	11.73
Maungatapere wastewater upgrades							LOS	16.4
Matapouri wastewater upgrades							LOS	63.3
Taurikura/Urquharts wastewater upgrades							LOS	4.46
Maunu Ln-Keays Rd Sewer Upgrade-Stage 2							LOS	1.7

7.6 Levels of Service

The wastewater activity has the following Levels of Service which are supported by performance measures included in Appendix B:

- In declared service areas, Council will collect, treat and dispose of wastewater through a reliable wastewater network which is managed to ensure blockages, breaks or spillages are kept to a minimum.
- Council will provide well maintained and accessible public toilets in high use areas.

While the allocated funding will enable Levels of Service to be maintained over the life of this Strategy, key challenges faced relate to:

- The Asset Survival Model indicating that there are early pipeline failures requiring renewal. This is expected to increase overall operational cost as reactive repairs are undertaken at the expense of capital renewals
- Risks associated with meeting consent compliance requirements at wastewater treatment plants.

To address these issues Council will prioritise funding on renewals and take a proactive approach to monitoring treatment plants and negotiating consent conditions. Where necessary, upgrade funding will be considered in future planning cycles.

7.7 Activity Summary

Within the wastewater activity, the need to maintain or replace assets subject to failure, and the information required to optimise decisions in doing so, are key issues to be considered as part of the overarching Strategy.

The impact of changing standards and regulatory requirements are also of note and will be considered as part of the broader Strategic Context under Section 3 of this Strategy.

The Ruakaka Ocean Outfall has been identified as a potentially Significant Project under Section 4 of this Strategy.

8 Stormwater

8.1 Overview

The stormwater network comprises a combination of piped systems, access holes and sumps, open channels, treatment devices and rivers and streams. The main stormwater network is predominantly concrete pipes and is relatively new. Stormwater has:

- 11 major stormwater catchments in Whangarei City
- 17 smaller settlements with stormwater networks
- 427 km mains and service lines
- \$260 million optimised replacement cost

8.2 Asset Condition and Risk

Condition predictions for underground mains and service lines are based on physical inspection of approximately 8% of the network by CCTV. The Asset Survival Model created from this data recognises natural variations in asset life, and provides a more robust estimate of useful life than “nameplate” assumptions. The data indicates that, while some assets will survive well beyond their “nameplate” life, others will become unserviceable prior to that. The accuracy of the survival model will improve as more pipes are inspected.

Physical inspection has shown that, in some cases, stormwater network infrastructure that has been installed in the past 20-years has a higher failure rate than that which was installed in previous decades.

While supported by statistical analysis, further physical inspection is required to confirm condition and improve the accuracy of the model. Validation of the model will also assist any future analysis of useful life.

Asset Condition	Risk / Implication
Aged pipeline	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> High rate of replacement required leading to a potential renewal backlog Requirement to factor age into long term renewals programme
Outdated or poor materials	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some materials deteriorating faster than expected and therefore requiring earlier renewal
Condition modelling	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Renewal programme is based on an Asset Survival Model that has limited verified information.

8.3 Critical Infrastructure Assets

The stormwater activity does not contain any assets that are considered critical, in terms of requiring immediate restoration following a disaster or other major event.

8.4 Key Strategic Issues

Issue	Options	Implications
Information available is insufficient for proactive management of assets	Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Failure to maximise expenditure decisions Increased costs as renewal programme may not be based on accurate information Increased unexpected failure of network
	Rely on modelling only	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Modelling alone may over- or under- state asset condition and capacity Asset modelling relies on the best information available at the time, which may be incomplete Increased long term cost
	Fund asset data and systems improvement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The accuracy of models improves as data is collected Reduced cost as maintenance and renewal expenditure is prioritised based on best available information Provides baseline information for long term planning.

Commentary and Anticipated Response:

There are limitations on historic data. Council prefers to extend and verify the information currently available in the asset database so that it can be better used for proactive asset management purposes. To address this issue Council will:

- Undertake a data improvement/validation programme
- Increase funding for condition assessments and modelling on network assets
- While not a factor in the adequacy of data, Council will also fund the upgrade or replacement of the Asset Management Information System (AMIS), which is currently unsupported.

Issue	Options	Implications
Some assets are deteriorating quicker than expected, potentially resulting in a large backlog of stormwater assets requiring replacement	Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ongoing deterioration and failure of the stormwater network Increased operational spend due to reactive repairs Increases in the extent and frequency of flooding due to failures Reduction in Levels of Service
	Maintain existing pipelines	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Using the same materials will reduce the renewal period Ongoing failure points in network resulting in flooding Increased backlog of renewals, with funds diverted from other infrastructure classes Reduction in Levels of Service

Issue	Options	Implications
	Renewals and update materials	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ability to use better “fit for purpose” materials • Lower long term maintenance costs • More reliable stormwater network • Maintains Levels of Service.

Commentary and Anticipated Response:

Limited condition testing of the stormwater network has been undertaken. However, this is indicating that pipelines are deteriorating more rapidly than expected. Pipelines that have been installed in the past 20 years appear to be deteriorating at a faster than anticipated rate, resulting in a shorter life expectancy. Council prefers to prioritise a renewals programme that replaces older materials with “fit for purpose” modern materials in accordance with evidence-based assessments of physical condition. To address this issue Council will:

- Continue to undertake a renewals programme based on physical condition assessment and modelling
- Increase physical condition assessments
- Review design standards, construction methods and materials for stormwater systems
- Enhance construction supervision for stormwater assets that are to be vested in Council.

Issue	Options	Implications
Effects of extreme storm events on the community are not well understood	Do Nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Not well prepared for flooding events • Projects required to protect the community may not be identified in the 30-year plan • Potential adverse impact on Council's overall funding strategy
	Undertake flooding assessments	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Better asset information to model the effects of flooding • Increased funding to undertake modelling • Interfaces with the Regional Council in relation to river and coastal flooding • Capital projects can be considered in future planning rounds.

Commentary and Anticipated Response:

Historically, the stormwater system has been designed for a 1:5-year flood event. However, regulatory requirements are increasing and the system is likely to be subject to more frequent and intense events going forward. Council has limited modelling and data to determine the impacts of these trends on the network. To address this issue Council will:

- Increase funding for catchment plans and network modelling
- Work with Northland Regional Council to enhance understanding of the impacts of more frequent and severe events.

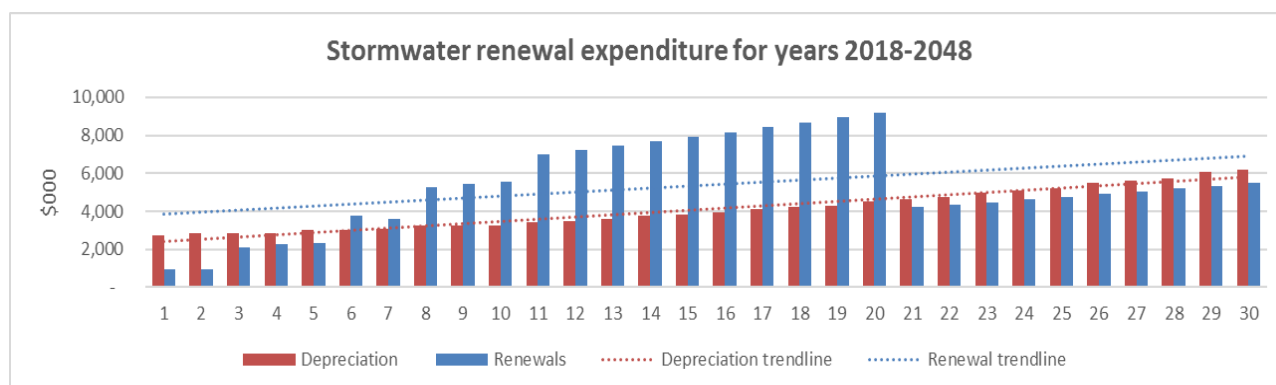
Issue	Options	Implications
Increased regional environmental and flood protection requirements	Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Potential bow-wave of upgrades to install treatment devices once consent conditions are known • Increased cost over time
	Retro-fit treatment devices and negotiate consent conditions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Improved water quality • Ongoing costs, but a reduction in potential bow-wave of renewals • Regulatory compliance.

Issue	Options	Implications
Commentary and Anticipated Response: <p>There is an increasing focus on water quality. Improved environmental standards may affect the renewal of some stormwater network discharge consents, resulting in a potential need to install new treatment devices. In addition, increasing regulatory requirements are also likely to require new stormwater networks to be designed to a higher standard. Council prefers to actively negotiate consent conditions based on sound environmental information, and to continue a programme of retro-fitting treatment devices on existing stormwater outlets. To address this issue Council will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Actively negotiate potential consent conditions well before consents expire to increase certainty and enable funding decisions Provide funding for a programme of retro-fitting treatment devices on stormwater outlets Actively participate in Regional Plan reviews, particularly relating to flood risk. 		

8.5 Activity Funding Strategy

8.5.1 Renewal Profile

The stormwater renewals profile below shows the budgeted renewals for years 1-10 of the Strategy relative to depreciation. Depreciation is then forecast for years 11 – 30 with renewal requirements identified through the AMP also being forecast over that period. In doing so, the graph gives the reader an understanding of the required renewal budget relative to depreciation over the life of the Strategy.



In preparing the renewals profile for stormwater, a range of technical information and asset life data has been considered. These detailed assumptions and parameters are contained within the AMP. Broadly speaking, renewal requirements are based on the Council's Asset Survival Model, which uses historical CCTV information to estimate the proportion of assets that survive to a given age (and, by extension, the proportion of assets that will fail at a given age).

To enable Council to build delivery capacity, expenditure on renewals is relatively low in the early years of the Strategy, progressively increasing from year three. This increase represents a reprioritisation of renewals funding, recognising that there has been historic underfunding within this asset class. As a result, there is a bow-wave of renewals within the first 30-years of the Strategy, which, if funding levels continue, will be addressed over the life of the Strategy.

As a result of this reprioritisation projected renewals track well over depreciation over the life of the Strategy, at 131%.

8.5.2 Other Significant or Major Capital Expenditure

Over the life of the Strategy, stormwater has the following major projects (excluding programmes) where nonrenewal expenditure exceeds 10% of the total capital for the activity in any year of delivery:

Major Capital Expenditure								
Description	2018 / 23	2023 / 28	2028 / 33	2033 / 38	2038 / 43	2043 / 48	Key Driver	Uninflated Cost (\$m)
Teal Bay							LOS	1.14
Morningside Stormwater Upgrades							LOS	12.2

8.6 Levels of Service

The stormwater activity has the following Level of Service, which is supported by performance measures included in Appendix B:

- Council will provide a stormwater network that minimises flood risks and environmental impacts.

The 2015 – 25 LTP included no funding for stormwater renewals, and limited funding for the installation of new treatment devices across the network.

Existing assets do not provide sufficient flood protection to meet the required Level of Service. The current review of the Northland Regional Policy Statement may also lead to changes in environmental regulation and consent requirements.

To address these issues Council has prioritised funding on stormwater renewals, with \$32 million being provisioned in the first 10 years of the Strategy (\$1 million in year one increasing to \$5.5 million in year 10).

8.7 Activity Summary

Within the stormwater activity the need to maintain or replace ageing assets, and the information required to make the best decisions in doing so, are key issues to be considered as part of the overarching strategy.

Of note are the issues likely to be experienced in maintaining Levels of Service, which have resulted in stormwater renewals receiving priority funding.

The impact of changing standards and regulatory requirements are also of note and will be considered as part of the broader Strategic Context under Section 3 of this Strategy.

9 Transportation

9.1 Overview

The transportation network includes all Council-formed roads and associated assets, as well as parking and footpaths on State Highways. The network excludes private roads and paper roads. Transportation has:

- 1,055 km sealed roads (excludes bridges)
- 693 km un-sealed roads (excludes bridges)
- 400 km Council-owned footpaths and shared paths
- 5.5 km bridges
- \$1.06 billion optimised replacement cost

9.2 Asset Condition and Risk

The condition of the road network is determined in accordance with the standard NZTA deterioration model, DTIMS. This model provides accurate, repeatable measures of rutting, roughness, texture and surface condition.

Overall network condition and performance is good, although there are some performance issues relating to sealed pavements, unsealed roads and traffic signals:

- Approximately 10% of the sealed network is in a very poor condition
- Residents' satisfaction with the unsealed network is low
- There are increasing reliability issues due to water entering the signal network
- All bridges and culverts are in relatively good condition.

Investment in maintenance and renewals, and development of new strategies, will address these performance issues.

9.3 Critical Infrastructure Assets

Site	Resilience Strategy
Road to Whangarei Heads	The road network provides critical connections in the event of a widespread emergency, providing connections for emergency response, as well as ongoing recovery. The critical roads identified include connections to communities where there are little or no alternative routes available, or the road provides an arterial route. Ranking of criticality and responses is set out in a hierarchy of plans that include:
Road to Marsden Point	
Bank St	
Kamo Road	

Site	Resilience Strategy
Tawera Rd	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rooding Business Continuity Plan • Northland Civil Defence Emergency Plan • State Highway Detour Plans • WDC Storm Management Plans
Port Rd	
Road to Airport – Riverside Dr / Onerahi / Church St	

9.4 Key Strategic Issues

Issue	Options	Implications
Whangarei is geographically constrained, reducing options to grow the road network and address congestion	Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Increased traffic congestion and loss of amenity • Loss of productivity for the community • Reduction in Level of Service
	Road upgrades only	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Constrained network limits road upgrade options • Does not address increased volume of traffic over time • Requires major investment
	Promote alternative transport alongside road upgrades	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Extends lifecycle of existing constrained road network • Slows the rate of rising congestion • Community health and amenity benefits • Environmental benefits, particularly in relation to emissions.

Commentary and Anticipated Response:

Whangarei is geographically constrained, restricting the ability to grow the urban road network along already built up routes. This constraint is compounded by high traffic growth, reliance on private vehicle use and an ageing traffic signal system. Council prefers to take a multi-pronged, co-ordinated approach to managing congestion by upgrading key intersections and roads, as well as promoting alternative transport options. To address this issue Council will:

- Identify and promote alternative mass transport options, including bus lanes, park and ride facilities and light rail
- Promote walking and cycling, and in particular, develop safe cycle routes along main transport routes.

Issue	Options	Implications
Our sealed road network is vulnerable to heavy vehicle traffic which is expected to grow in volume and intensity	Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sealed pavements on freight routes will deteriorate and no longer be fit for purpose • Loss of District and Regional economic benefits • Increased bow-wave of renewals • Potential loss of NZTA subsidies
	Continue with existing funding levels	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Maintain economic benefits of getting local goods to market • Less funding available for non-freight route renewals
	Even funding across all roads	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reduces renewals on heavily used roads resulting in pavement deterioration • Potential loss of funding under NZTA's ONRC funding model.

Commentary and Anticipated Response:

Sealed roads are vulnerable to damage (particularly from heavy vehicles) due to thin/narrow pavements, poor geology, a semi-tropical climate, over-stabilisation and historical under-investment in renewals. Council prefers to work with NZTA, industry and neighbouring districts to take a region-wide approach to this issue and identify alternative freight routes to reduce the overall impact. To address this issue Council will:

- Continue a programme of pavement renewals to maintain sealed pavements on freight routes in a 'fit for purpose' condition while optimising the long-term maintenance costs
- Continue the forestry road programme
- Identify and maintain other freight routes to a higher standard to cope with the increasing freight loads over time
- Prioritise maintenance, including drainage.

Issue	Options	Implications
Poor network resilience results in closures	Repair road damage and clear slips as they occur	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unreliable transport routes, particularly important for commercial and freight routes • Reduces funding for renewal and capital works • Increased community isolation
	Increase resilience through proactive management of risks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reduced closures over time • Renewal and capital projects are maintained • Improved overall road condition • Reduced impact on Council's overall funds

Commentary and Anticipated Response:

Poor geology and a subtropical climate make our roads susceptible to slips and flooding during heavy rain events. Climate change is expected to increase the intensity of major rain events, over time. Where slips and other road damage occurs, funding is often diverted from other renewals and capital programmes to re-instate the affected road. Council prefers to proactively manage slip mitigation by undertaking preventative works where practicable and ensuring there are detours available. To address this issue Council will:

- Address slips and flood mitigation in a proactive manner
- Provide 'fit for purpose' detour routes
- Consider the impacts of climate change in low lying / coastal areas.

Issue	Options	Implications
The introduction of ONRC (One Network Road Classification) may see reduced subsidised funding for some activities on certain classes of roads	Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ONRC will be implemented without Council input • Greater potential for loss of subsidy funding • Reduction in Levels of Service over a wider part of the road network
	Liaise with NZTA and respond	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Opportunity to influence implementation of the ONRC system • Maintain maximum available funding • Potential changes in Level of Service over a small area of the road network.

Commentary and Anticipated Response:

NZTA is implementing a new One Network Road Classification (ONRC) system for assessing subsidy levels. This may take up to seven years to bed in and has the potential to affect when roads are eligible for funding. Council prefers to work closely with NZTA as the new system is developed. To address this issue Council will:

- Continue to work closely with NZTA in the development and implementation of the ONRC funding model
- Review and revise Levels of Service to align with ONRC requirements as they develop
- Educate the community on any potential changes to Levels of Service.

Issue	Options	Implications
The number of fatal and serious injury crashes on our roads is high and continues to trend upward	Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continuing upward trend in high severity road crashes • Increasing social and economic impact on the community
	Improve road design	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Severity of road crashes can be reduced • Does not address driver behaviour and other contributors to crashes
	Co-ordinated all-agency road safety approach, including design solutions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Severity of road crashes can be reduced • Reduced social cost • All contributors to crashes targeted.

Issue	Options	Implications
Commentary and Anticipated Response: <p>Council recognises that there are often a range of factors that contribute to serious crashes, including road design and condition. To reduce the number of serious crashes, Council prefers to take a co-ordinated, inter-agency approach to provide a safe road system targeting safer speeds, safe road use, safe vehicles and roadsides. To address this issue Council will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Prioritise treatments to evidence-based high risk areas • Continue to work with road partners and develop road safety promotions targeting key risk areas • Create a more forgiving road system, by developing a safe system approach. 		

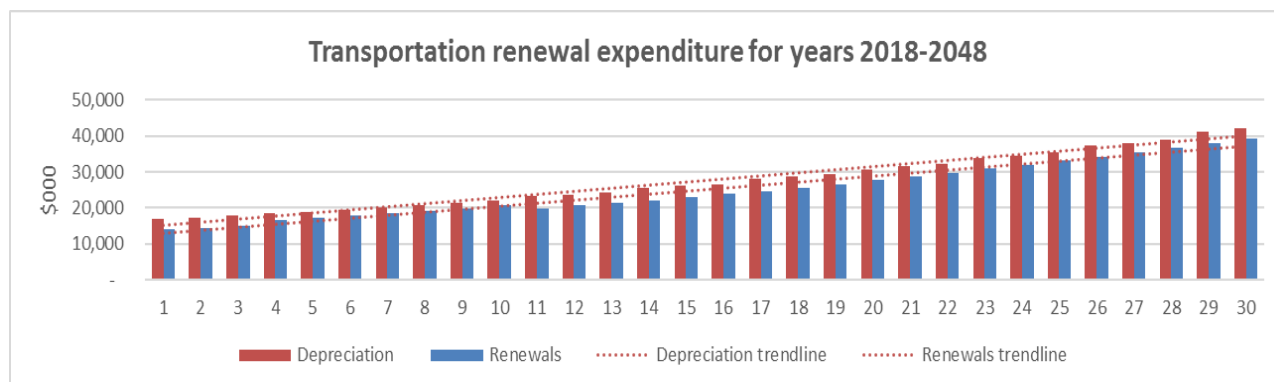
Issue	Options	Implications
Future transport technologies, including electric vehicles and autonomous vehicles will have an impact on the roading infrastructure	Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Potential loss of economic opportunity • Long term cost associated with upgrades needed to “catch-up” with technology
	Watching brief	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A need to keep up to speed with developing technologies • A need to future proof infrastructure we install today
	Future proof network	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Additional electric charge facilities • Lower costs of installing new technology as provision has already been made.
Commentary and Anticipated Response: <p>Transport technologies are evolving rapidly, with increasing numbers of electric cars on the road requiring charge points and autonomous vehicles being tested on New Zealand roads. New technology has the potential to reduce emissions and improve safety. However, new technology may also present new challenges that we do not fully understand today. Council prefers to maintain a “watching brief” on emerging technologies and incorporate future proofing into design and development work, where practicable. To address this issue Council will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure we keep up to speed with developing technologies • Consider future technologies and how we can future proof infrastructure we install today. 		

Issue	Options	Implications
The proposed relocation of the Whangarei Airport may require upgrades to roads and new transport routes	Watching brief	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Provides a long lead-in time for expenditure • Cost estimates and funding based on a fully developed project
	Budget for a potential road upgrade	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Funding would be for an unknown project with unknown costs • Potential reduction in funding available for other capital projects.
Commentary and Anticipated Response: <p>Depending on the proposed location and planned size of the Airport, there may be a requirement to upgrade road infrastructure to enable the construction and ongoing operation. Council prefers to retain the cost of any upgrade as an unprovisioned risk until the proposal is further developed, on the basis that a road upgrade will be within the overall cost of any Airport proposal. To address this issue Council will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Undertake a needs assessment once the proposed Airport location and size is known • Incorporate the cost of access road upgrades into the overall costing of the project. 		

9.5 Activity Funding Strategy

9.5.1 Renewal Profile

The transportation renewals profile below shows the budgeted renewals for years 1-10 of the Strategy relative to depreciation. Depreciation is then forecast for years 11 – 30 with renewal requirements identified through the AMP also being forecast over that period. In doing so, the graph gives the reader an understanding of the required renewal budget relative to depreciation over the life of the Strategy.



Renewals are driven by national standards adopted by NZTA, along with other mandatory non-financial performance standards required by the Department of Internal Affairs (DIA).

The principle condition rating model that determines an asset's condition and the overall renewal profile is the NZTA deterioration model, DTIMS.

Renewals will initially focus on forestry and arterial road networks. Local access roads will not be treated unless they meet the criteria set out above and are deemed a high risk to the customers.

While projected renewals closely track depreciation over the course of the Strategy at 91%, it is important to note that road and footpath condition modelling, and subsequent prioritisation, is based on actual deterioration data.

Also of note is a potential bow-wave of bridges coming to the end of their design life in 15 – 20 years. There will be condition assessment of these assets well in advance of this to ensure potential risks are managed and renewals are smoothed.

As a result, there is a relatively high level of confidence in modelling. The funding rate is therefore considered prudent and there are no major bow-waves identified beyond the 30-year period.

9.6 Other Significant or Major Capital Expenditure

Over the life of the Strategy, transportation have one potentially significant project, Riverside Drive/Onerahi Road, which is covered in detail under Section 4, and the following major projects (excluding programmes) where nonrenewal expenditure exceeds 10% of the total capital for the activity in any year of delivery:

Major Capital Expenditure								
Description	2018 / 23	2023 / 28	2028 / 33	2033 / 38	2038 / 43	2043 / 48	Key Driver	Uninflated Cost (\$m)
One Tree Point Road Upgrades							Growth	7.58
Marsden Point Road Upgrades							Growth	21.96
Kamo Route Bus Priority Lanes/4-Laning							Growth	12.0
Riverside Drive/Onerahi Road							Growth	20.0
Port/Kioreroa RAB and Bridge 4-laning							Growth	7.0
Reyburn St/Okara Dr/Port Rd Bus Priority Lanes/4-Laning							Growth	15.0
SH1 to SH14 Maunu Link Road							Growth	15.0
Hatea Dr 4-Laning							Growth	12.0
Park N Ride Facilities							Growth	16.0
Tikipunga Route Bus Priority Lanes/4-Laning							Growth	18.0
Maunu Rd/Water St Bus Priority Lanes							Growth	15.0
Tarewa Rd Intersection //Walton 4-Laning							Growth	11.0

9.7 Levels of Service

The transportation activity has the following Levels of Service, which are supported by performance measures included in Appendix B:

- The District's roading network will be maintained in a satisfactory condition and in accordance with national safety and engineering standards.
- We will support alternative transport methods.
- Travel times in and around the network will be predictable and disruptions to the network will be well managed and communicated.

Funding for the transportation activity is sufficient to maintain current Levels of Service over the medium to long term. However, the maintenance of existing Levels of Service may not meet increasing customer expectations, the Department of Internal Affairs (DIA) mandatory non-financial performance measures for the safety of local roads or the requirements of ONRC once implemented.

These issues will be monitored over time with any changes to Levels of Service being considered in future planning rounds.

9.8 Activity Summary

There is one potentially significant project for transportation, the Riverside Drive/Onerahi Road project, which is considered in detail under Section 4 of this Strategy.

10 Flood Protection

10.1 Overview

The Hikurangi Swamp flood protection and control scheme was first implemented in the early 1900's, with a more substantive scheme implemented in the 1970's. While the older scheme pumps have relatively low run hours, they are supported by older, and potentially outdated, electrical control systems. The scheme has:

- 68 km of stopbanks and spillways
- 17 spillway sensors
- Seven pump stations
- 20 pumps and control equipment
- 15 pumps over 40 years old
- \$41 million optimised replacement cost

10.2 Asset Condition and Risk

The flood protection and control works in the Hikurangi area are functioning adequately and earthworks have recently been completed to raise stop bank levels. Some concrete structures are showing signs of structural wear and will be costly to repair. It is proposed that these be maintained rather than replaced.

10.3 Critical Infrastructure Assets

The flood protection activity does not contain any assets that are considered critical, in terms of requiring immediate restoration following a disaster or other major event.

10.4 Key Strategic Issues

Issue	Options	Implications
The scheme is designed to protect pasture in relatively small stormwater events (1:3.5-year return to 1:20). If large cyclonic events are more regular, the investment in the scheme becomes less economic	Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Slowly reducing Level of Service from the scheme • Long term implications on farming sustainability
	Upgrade scheme	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • High cost, with economic impacts on scheme beneficiaries • Amendments to the current resource consent required.

Issue	Options	Implications
Commentary and Anticipated Response: <p>The long term economic viability of the scheme will be affected by more frequent high intensity rainfall events brought about by climate change. Greater intensity of storm events may lead to increased requirements for operational and/or capital expenditure. Currently, no contingencies for extreme weather have been included in the LTP budget. To address this issue Council will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Monitor the financial, environmental and economic impact of increased flood events and, through a consultative process, evaluate how best to provide additional asset investment where required. 		

Issue	Options	Implications
The Hikurangi Flood Protection Scheme is funded by targeted rates, and is expected to be debt free by year three of the LTP	Continue current rating	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Debt paid off to Council Funding available for ongoing maintenance Reserve fund built for future maintenance, renewals and upgrades
	Reduce rating	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Allows for maintenance only Upgrades to the scheme not funded Potential loss of benefits from scheme.
Commentary and Anticipated Response: <p>Scheme works are predominantly funded from targeted rates. The Hikurangi Swamp Major Scheme Rating District contributes approximately 89% percent of the total targeted rates, and the Hikurangi Swamp Drainage Rating District contributes the remaining 11% percent. Some minor additional revenue is provided from land rentals. The flood control scheme is expected to be in credit by 2022. Council prefers to utilise targeted rates to build a reserve fund for future upgrades. To address this issue Council will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Build a reserve fund for the scheme to enable future maintenance, renewals and upgrades Through a consultative process, make decisions in relation to long term funding of opex, renewals and the level of upgrade to the flood protection design level. 		

Issue	Options	Implications
Land settlement due to peat oxidation has the potential to slowly reduce the drainage ability of the scheme	Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Land owners with peat soils get reduced protection from the scheme Long term effects on sustainability of the scheme
	Design new pump stations with lower inlet levels	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> High cost Potential cost to scheme beneficiaries directly affected by land settlement.
Commentary and Anticipated Response: <p>Approximately 15% of the area within the scheme is fertile peat land. Land settlement affects 15% of the scheme-protected farmland which decreases the rate at which water drains, resulting in degraded channel flow and siltation and more prolonged flooding and pasture loss. This, in turn, has a range of effects on the efficiency of the scheme. Council recognises that this issue is one of a range of matters that will need to be considered when making decisions on the long term funding of the scheme. To address this issue Council will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Develop a long term action plan and consider adequate resourcing. 		

Issue	Options	Implications
There is increasing pressure to mitigate the effects of the scheme on eels and natural habitat	Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ongoing adverse effects on the environment, particularly on habitat and eels Increasing community pressure on Council
	Contribute to environmental improvement programmes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Provides an inter-agency, co-ordinated approach with Fonterra, Iwi, NRC and farmers Reduces overall costs Provides wider environmental benefits
	Replace infrastructure to reduce effects	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> High cost Ability to co-ordinate with renewals.

Issue	Options	Implications
-------	---------	--------------

Commentary and Anticipated Response:

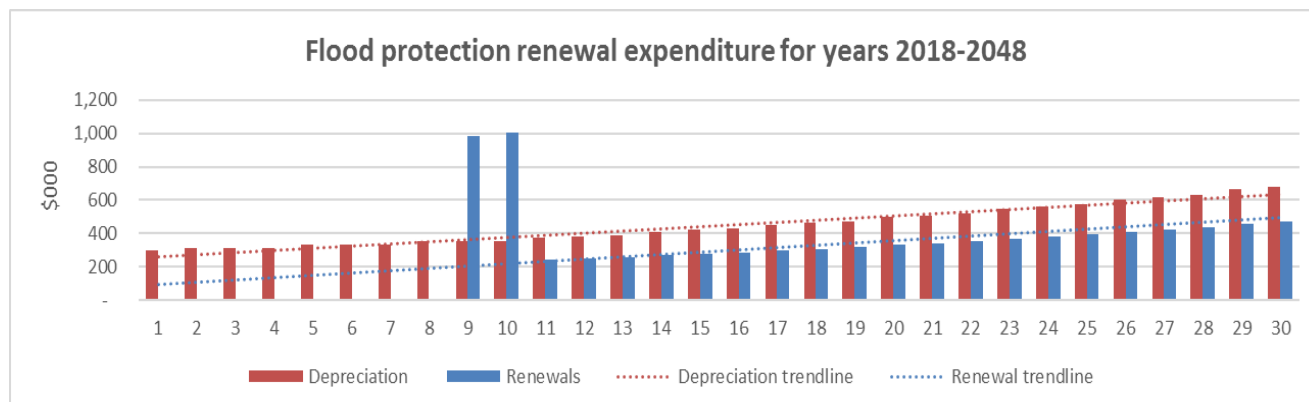
The scheme consent incorporates a condition requiring the enhancement of fish passage and deterrents for the entrainment of fish in the scheme pumps. Over time, community and regulatory expectations are increasing. Council prefers to work alongside other agencies and contribute to wider environmental improvement programmes, with the objective of achieving larger environmental gains. To address this issue Council will:

- Fund upgrades to address the impacts of the scheme, particularly on eels, in line with renewals
- Identify, and contribute, to appropriate environmental improvement programmes
- Co-ordinate with other relevant agencies, business, Iwi, and community initiatives.

10.5 Activity Funding Strategy

10.5.1 Renewal Profile

The flood protection renewals profile below shows the budgeted renewals for years 1-10 of the Strategy relative to depreciation. Depreciation is then forecast for years 11 – 30 with renewal requirements identified through the AMP also being forecast over that period. In doing so, the graph gives the reader an understanding of the required renewal budget relative to depreciation over the life of the Strategy (note, depreciation calculated is not charged to the scheme ratepayers).



In preparing the renewals profile for flood protection, a range of technical information and asset life data has been considered. These detailed assumptions and parameters are contained within the AMP.

While there is no renewals funding within the early years of the Strategy, there is a spike in pump renewals in the later years of the LTP with an escalating renewals profile from that point. Also of note is that all revenue collected from the scheme is ring-fenced, and a capital programme has been developed that aims to replace the pump stations with more environmental friendly pumps over a 20-year period.

As a result of this, average renewals track under depreciation over the life of the Strategy, at 66%.

10.5.2 Other Significant or Major Capital Expenditure

While there are no significant or major capital projects within this activity there are ongoing programmes for gravity drainage gates and pump upgrades/replacements.

10.6 Levels of Service

The flood protection activity has the following Level of Service which is supported by performance measures included in Appendix B:

- Council will provide a reliable and sustainable flood protection scheme, which is managed to mitigate flooding within the Hikurangi Swamp Scheme area to an acceptable level.

While the funding allocated will enable Levels of Service to be maintained over the life of this Strategy, there are increasing expectations to address environmental effects of the scheme, particularly in relation to fish passage, eel management and habitat. Council has provisioned for replacement of pumps over the life of the Strategy.

10.6.1 Activity Summary

The impact of climate change is also of note and will be addressed as part of the broader Strategic Context under Section 3 of this Strategy.

11 Solid Waste

11.1 Overview

The solid waste infrastructure activity provides refuse collection and disposal services throughout the District, including recycling collection, litter control, transfer stations and the Puwera Landfill.

- The Puwera Landfill and Re:Sort facility (through a Joint Venture)
- A rural recycling facility
- Eight transfer stations
- \$1.7 million depreciated replacement cost

11.2 Asset Condition and Risk

Many solid waste assets are in relatively new condition with sufficient capacity over the 30-year horizon. However, the sealed pavements and access roads to some transfer stations are ageing and will eventually need to be resurfaced.

In addition, the activity has a large number of short life/low value items (notably rubbish bins) that will require replacement over the life of the Strategy. As a result, approximately 48% of assets within the group will reach the end of their nameplate life over the 30-years.

There is a potential risk to public health if some assets are not maintained at an appropriate level, particularly in relation to safety barriers and fences.

11.3 Critical Infrastructure Assets

The solid waste activity does not contain any assets that are considered critical in terms of requiring immediate restoration following a disaster or other major event.

11.4 Key Strategic Issues

Issue	Options	Implications
A long-term renewal and maintenance programme is required to ensure assets do not deteriorate	Deferred maintenance and renewal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Increased rate of asset failure and reduced asset life • Increased reactive maintenance • Lower Levels of Service and customer satisfaction • Eventual bow-wave of renewals
	Maintenance and renewal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Maintains assets at current levels • Spreads costs over a longer period • Maintains Level of Service
	Upgrade now	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Greater cost • Investment may exceed capacity requirements • Improved Level of Service

Commentary and Anticipated Response:

Many of Council's solid waste assets are in good to excellent condition with capacity over the next 30 years. However, a reduced asset maintenance and renewal programme will result in these assets deteriorating over time. To address this issue Council will:

- Review the condition and capacity of solid waste assets each three-year LTP cycle
- Provision funding for asset maintenance and renewal
- Where investment for major maintenance or renewal is identified, Council will consider funding through a combination of user charges and level of service funding.

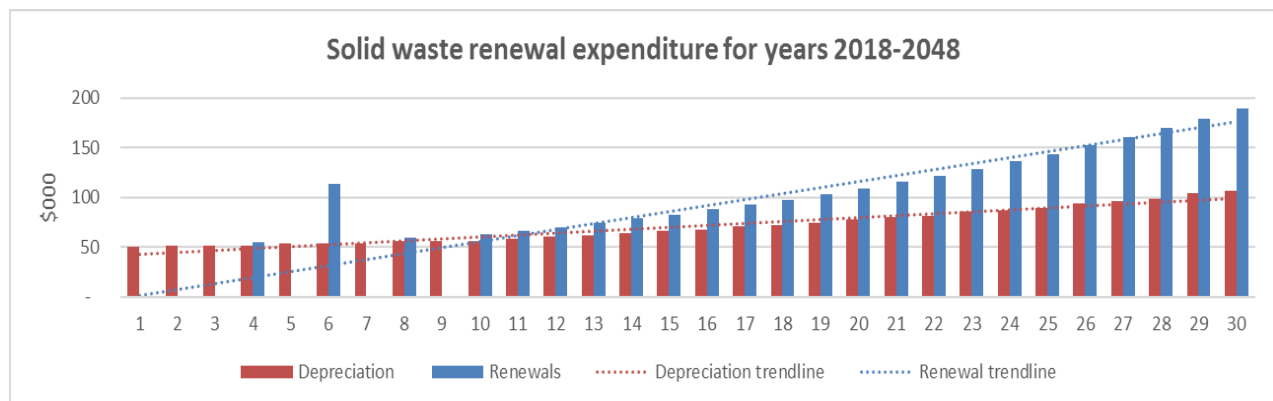
Issue	Options	Implications
There are increasing visitor numbers to the District, resulting in an increasing need for seasonal solid waste facilities, particularly in coastal areas	Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reduction in Levels of Service • Increased litter and solid waste issues • Reduction in reputation as a destination
	Provide appropriate facilities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reduction in litter, particularly in busy areas • Higher cost to the community • Maintain Levels of Service

Issue	Options	Implications
Commentary and Anticipated Response: <p>Council recognises that tourism provides an economic benefit to the community. However, increased seasonal visitor numbers place greater pressure on solid waste collection, disposal and on managing litter. In many cases, visitors do not directly contribute to the management of solid waste. Council prefers to promote the economic benefits of tourism and spread the cost of providing solid waste services that promote a clean and healthy environment across the wider community. To address this issue Council will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recognise the wider economic benefits of seasonal visitors • Provide public litter bins, particularly in high use areas, and fund these through general rates. 		

11.5 Activity Funding Strategy

11.5.1 Renewal Profile

The solid waste renewals profile below shows the budgeted renewals for years 1-10 of the Strategy relative to depreciation. Depreciation is then forecast for years 11 – 30 with renewal requirements identified through the AMP also being forecast over that period. In doing so, the graph gives the reader an understanding of the required renewal budget relative to depreciation over the life of the Strategy.



In preparing the renewals profile, a range of technical information and asset life data has been considered. These detailed assumptions and parameters are contained within the AMP. Broadly speaking, the assumptions are that priorities for the solid waste replacement programme will be assessed in terms of frequency of asset failure, ability to meet service level standards and the risk of environmental damage.

While there is no renewals funding within the early years of the Strategy, there is a spike in renewals in the mid to later years of the LTP, with an escalating renewals profile from that point. Also of note is that all revenue collected from the scheme is ring-fenced and a capital programme has been developed that aims to undertake progressive renewals over the life of the Strategy.

As a result average renewals exceed average depreciation over the life of the Strategy, at 167%.

11.5.2 Other Significant or Major Capital Expenditure

While there are no significant or major capital projects within this activity there are ongoing programmes for transfer station upgrades and renewals.

11.6 Levels of Service

The solid waste activity has the following Levels of Service which are supported by performance measures included in Appendix B:

- Council will provide kerbside refuse and recycling collection services to all properties in the District and transfer stations will be operated throughout the District.
- Council will reduce the amount of waste disposal to landfill per person each year.
- Council will reduce illegal dumping.

The funding allocated will enable Levels of Service to be maintained over the life of this Strategy.

11.7 Activity Summary

The funding available to solid waste enables Council to maintain Levels of Service over the life of the Strategy and there are no strategic of significant issues requiring further consideration.

12 Parks and Recreation

12.1 Overview

The parks and recreation activity covers a large range of assets including parks, walking tracks, sports fields and other community facilities. Parks and recreation have:

- 55 km of maintained tracks and walkways
- 37 playgrounds
- 57 wharves, jetties and pontoons
- Five skate parks
- \$37 million optimised replacement cost

12.2 Asset Condition and Risk

Parks and recreation manage a wide variety of unrelated assets, many of which have uncontrolled public access and usage. In addition, the asset group includes substantial tracts of land making up parks and reserves, which are not given condition ratings.

Overall asset conditions are average to good with:

- Sport and recreation facilities having been upgraded with new technologies in turf management
- Playgrounds, trails, linkages and coastal structures generally in good condition
- The majority of assets in poor condition being low value and low risk items (such as furniture, fences, lights and pavers)
- High use and/or value assets such as skate-parks being inspected annually as part of an independent safety audit
- Playgrounds being inspected weekly, with high use playgrounds such as the Town Basin playground being inspected three times a week (any maintenance requirements are undertaken as soon as practicable)
- Monthly maintenance inspections being undertaken by contractors to ensure compliance with NZS 5828 – 2004.

12.3 Critical Infrastructure Assets

The parks and recreation activity does not contain any assets that are considered critical in terms of requiring immediate restoration following a disaster or other major event.

12.4 Key Strategic Issues

Issue	Options	Implications
Growth requires increased land provision across parks and recreation categories	Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The average number of hectares per 1000 residents will decrease over time • User experience will be reduced
	Rely on developments only	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Smaller greenspaces may be provided locally • The ability to provide suitable sports grounds will be reduced • Major sports fields will become congested impacting on Council's ability to support active participation
	Rely on development contributions and seek a major strategic purchase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Smaller greenspaces may continue to be provided locally • Recreational and sporting participation of the community is provided for • Potentially increased travel time to sports facilities.

Issue	Options	Implications
Commentary and Anticipated Response: <p>Increased numbers of residents, particularly in areas that may experience higher than expected growth, place additional pressure on existing recreational facilities. As growth occurs, the availability of suitable land also becomes an issue, making it more difficult and expensive to provide appropriate facilities. Council prefers to utilise planning techniques to ensure that open space is provided within new developments, whilst investigating a new strategic land acquisition to increase the opportunities provided by Kensington Park. To address this issue Council will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Review current parks and recreation sites to determine their area of benefit and capacity • Consider more strategic land purchases and provide funding for a major strategic land purchase • Complete strategic planning and identify land acquisition funding requirements for consideration in the next LTP. 		

Issue	Options	Implications
Quality requirements for sports turfs and facilities are increasing over time	Do nothing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Existing sporting facilities will deteriorate over time • High performance local sports teams and individuals may be unable to train and compete locally • The ability of the District to benefit from hosting large national or international events will be lost
	Maintain and renew existing facilities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • More difficult to attract high performance sports teams and individuals to the District • Reduced opportunity for hosting events, resulting in lost economic opportunity
	Upgrade facilities as required and develop new facilities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Increased costs to meet quality standards • More development partnerships • Potential District-wide economic benefits.

Commentary and Anticipated Response: <p>Hosting national or international sporting events brings a range of social and economic benefits to the District. However, there is a need to provide sports turfs and facilities that are of an appropriate standard. Council recognises that requirements/expectations for facilities and turfs are increasing over time and prefers to develop sporting facilities in partnership with other organisations as the need arises. To address this issue Council will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continue to assess new technologies, strategies and opportunities • Consult with the community as these issues arise, with funding options considered within future programmes • Consider developing facilities in partnership with other organisations. 		
--	--	--

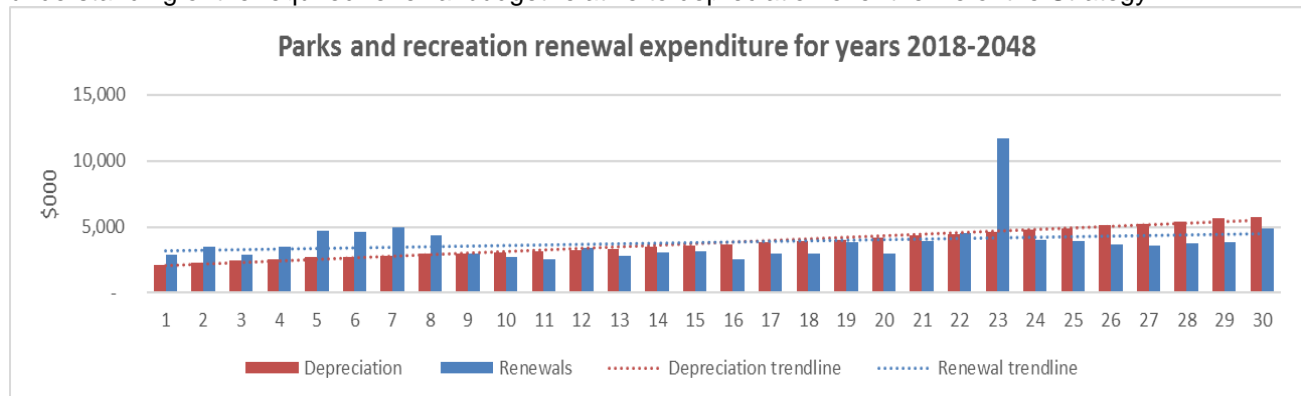
Issue	Options	Implications
Balancing competing priorities for the renewal of core assets against funding for growth and increased Levels of Service	Focus only on funding renewals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Loss of amenity and opportunities for the community • Will not meet increasing community expectations • Unlikely to attract visitors and new residents
	Consolidate and prioritise 'Sense of Place' funding into a dedicated programme	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ability to focus on cornerstone projects • Funding for projects to be completed on time and within budget • Meets increasing expectations.

Commentary and Anticipated Response: <p>There is an increasing expectation for higher levels of amenity and 'more things to see and do' in both traditional infrastructure projects and as a result of key amenity projects completed or enhanced within recent years (i.e. the Hatea Loop and Pocket Park which have been broadly supported). As a growing District, there is a greater expectation to see these types of projects across our urban and rural areas, which can compete with renewals funding. To address this issue Council will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Consolidate Sense of Place funding into a dedicated programme • Focus on cornerstone projects around Pohe Island and the Hatea Loop, and the 'Blue Green Network'. 		
--	--	--

12.5 Activity Funding Strategy

12.5.1 Renewal Profile

The parks and recreation renewals profile below shows the budgeted renewals for years 1-10 of the Strategy relative to depreciation. Depreciation is then forecast for years 11 – 30 with renewal requirements identified through the AMP also being forecast over that period. In doing so, the graph gives the reader an understanding of the required renewal budget relative to depreciation over the life of the Strategy



In preparing the renewals profile for the parks and recreation activity, a range of technical information and asset life data has been considered. These detailed assumptions and parameters are contained within the AMP.

Over the early years of the Strategy, renewals track significantly higher than depreciation funding, with the trend then balancing out through the middle years of the Strategy to average 102%.

There is a noticeable spike in coastal structure renewals in year 23, based on a large number of assets having the same install date. These assets are currently being assessed to determine their actual condition. Once the assessment report is available, Council will refine and smooth the renewals profile for these assets.

Also of note is that assets in some classes, predominantly turf based assets such as tracks, walkways and sports fields, may not have been entered in Council's asset management system. This means that these assets will not be within the above renewals to depreciation profile, which may be under projected.

Council has however assessed, and funded, renewal requirements for these assets within the supporting AMP and LTP. With the recent adoption of a Capitalisation Policy Council will work through a programme to get these asset classes into our system where appropriate.

12.6 Levels of Service

The parks and recreation activity has the following Levels of Service, which are supported by performance measures included in Appendix B:

- Council will provide and maintain outdoor sporting facilities to support and promote active recreation of the community through participation in both organised and informal sporting activities.
- Council will provide and maintain a range of reserves, including built facilities, to meet the needs of the community as well as protecting and enhancing the natural environment.
- Council will convert or upgrade identified existing open spaces to provide a wider range of high quality recreational and leisure opportunities within the District for our community and visitors.
- Council will provide and maintain cemeteries and a crematorium in a satisfactory manner.

While the funding allocated will enable Levels of Service to be maintained over the life of this Strategy, key challenges faced relate to:

- The acquisition of appropriate land for new or expanded sports fields, playgrounds and other facilities
- The need to develop a new facility similar to Kensington Park
- The rising cost of sports track renewals, although effects on Level of Service can be minimised through prioritisation and maintenance
- The need to complete assessments of coastal assets (currently underway) to confirm the renewal profile

- The need to balance/rationalise funding for growth and Levels of Service against renewals funding to ensure there is sufficient funding for core assets.

To address these issues, Council has provided for the acquisition of sports field and cemetery land within the first 10 years of the Strategy and will develop a land acquisition strategy to identify other strategic land acquisition requirements. The outcomes of that Strategy will be considered in the next LTP.

Elsewhere, proactive management and prioritisation will be undertaken to maintain Levels of Service, with any additional funding requirements identified (i.e. for coastal assets) being considered in the next LTP.

12.6.1 Other Significant or Major Capital Expenditure

Major Capital Expenditure								
Description	2018 / 23	2023 / 28	2028 / 33	2033 / 38	2038 / 43	2043 / 48	Key Driver	Uninflated Cost (\$m)
Cemetery Land Acquisition - Ruakaka Cemetery							Growth	1.5
New Seawall and Groynes One Tree Point							LOS	2.68
Pohe Island- Skate Park Upgrade							LOS	1.43
Town Basin – Conversion of Carpark to Park							LOS	4.8
Land Purchase and Development- Whangarei Heads and Springs Flat							Growth	1.1
Sportsfield Land Purchase							Growth	10
Soccer Hub at Tikipunga							LOS	1.15
Ruakaka Fields, Irrigation and Lighting							Growth	0.87
Otaika Sportspark Field Upgrade							LOS	0.98
Okara Park Carpark							LOS	0.68
Land for Cemetery							Growth	1
Tutukaka Car parking							Growth	1.1

12.6.2 Activity Summary

Within the parks and recreation activity the need to balance limited funding across competing priorities is a key strategic issue.

13 Key Assumptions

Description	Assumption	Uncertainty and Risk
Levels of Service	Council will maintain current Levels of Service for the duration of this Infrastructure Strategy.	Level of uncertainty: Low - Medium Risk: Any reduction in the levels of funding may result in a loss of service levels.
Growth	Growth will continue at a rate, and in locations, that are consistent with current growth models.	Level of uncertainty: Low - Medium Risk: Current growth models only have limited verification through census data. Any swings in growth may place additional pressure on infrastructure funding and/or Levels of Service. Council will mitigate this risk by monitoring growth, updating models with verified data and reprioritising programmes through Annual Plan processes where necessary.
Demand	Peak demand for infrastructure will continue to follow survey patterns.	Level of uncertainty: Low Risk: Seasonal population increases in some areas may place additional pressure on infrastructure, and could temporarily impact Levels of Service. To mitigate this, Council will consider updating the peak population survey.
Capacity to Deliver	That Council will be able to secure appropriate resourcing to deliver the increased capex programme.	Level of uncertainty: Medium Risk: Council's ability to deliver on the Strategy is driven by resourcing the capex programme with skilled staff and contractors. In preparing the LTP capex programme, department managers for each activity have assessed the internal resourcing required to deliver over the life of the LTP. It is anticipated that the market will respond with contractor capacity.
Inflation	Unless stated otherwise, modelling, graphs and costs have been inflated by LGCI based on Business and Economic Research Limited (BERL) projections in accordance with the financial assumptions and model supporting the LTP.	Level of uncertainty: Medium - High Risk: Inflation may under- or over-stated. Impacts of this are considered under the financial assumptions supporting the LTP.
Depreciation	Depreciation rates and data on the useful lives of infrastructural assets are based on revaluation of the rate average for each activity, in accordance with the financial assumptions and model supporting the LTP.	Level of uncertainty: Low Risk: Depreciation may be under- or over-stated
Vested Assets	Vested assets are fit for purpose and will meet their forecast lifecycle.	Level of uncertainty: Low - medium Risk: Faster than expected deterioration of vested assets could increase the need for renewals.
Asset Modelling	Current asset condition modelling is subject to limitations, but reflects the best information available to Council for decision making at this time.	Level of uncertainty: Medium Risk: Uncertainty of asset condition may lead to poor prioritisation of funding and renewals. To mitigate this risk, Council will target funding for assessment of asset condition for older assets and in areas where works are planned. This risk will also reduce, over time, as more condition assessments are undertaken and modelling is validated.
Regulatory Compliance	All regulatory requirements are complied with.	Level of uncertainty: Medium Risk: Forecasting is based on current regulatory requirements, including resource consents. Increasing regulatory requirements can lead to the need for high cost, unplanned upgrades or new assets. Changes to the regulatory environment are identified as a potential strategic issue and risk.
National Water Quality Standards	Treated water quality complies with the New Zealand Drinking Water Standards, and approved Public Health Risk Management Plans (Water Safety Plans), and that treatment plants can cope with changes to these standards with only minor upgrades.	Level of uncertainty: Low Risk: There is a risk of prosecution if Drinking Water Standards are not met. Council will monitor any changes to standards and respond where necessary.
National Policy Statement on Urban Development Capacity	The National Policy Statement on Urban Development Capacity sets out a process for high growth Councils to assess feasible capacity and produce a Development Strategy. While this process will not be completed prior to the adoption of this Strategy, Council has assumed that it has sufficient feasible capacity based on initial assessments undertaken.	Level of uncertainty: Low Risk: Should Council not have sufficient feasible capacity it will need to provide for this through future planning and funding processes.

Description	Assumption	Uncertainty and Risk
Service Delivery Models	Council has recently reviewed the delivery of services under Section 17A of the LGA. In doing so, Council has adopted a mixed delivery model with the delivery of many services covered by this Strategy outsourced to contractors and some core services, such as treatment plant operation, retained in-house. It is assumed that service models will remain constant over the life of this Strategy.	Level of uncertainty: Low Risk: A major change to the mechanism for infrastructure service delivery as part of future Section 17A review may affect how infrastructure is managed, resulting in different funding or priorities.
Fluoridation	There is no widespread fluoridation of the District's water supply and it is assumed that this will not be required over the life of this Strategy.	Level of uncertainty: Low Risk: A decision to fluoridate drinking water would expose Council to unbudgeted upgrade costs.
Regional Airport	That an upgrade to parts of the road network to support and service any new regional airport will be funded as part of the overall Airport proposal.	Level of uncertainty: Low Risk: The proposed regional airport is currently in the feasibility and site identification stages, and roading requirements are not clear. To mitigate this risk Council will budget for any roading requirements as part of the project.

Appendix A: Asset Management System Objectives and Actions

Asset Management Policy Objectives	Asset Management Actions to Achieve Objectives
We recognise the International Infrastructure Management Manual as our best practice guideline, noting there may be discrepancies for Roading as a result of NZTA requirements.	An Asset Management Policy is adopted by the Strategic Leadership Team (SLT).
	An Asset Management Strategy is adopted by SLT.
	AMPs are updated tri-annually and approved by SLT.
We actively engage with stakeholders in refining levels of service, and we will monitor customer satisfaction.	Stakeholders are identified and communicated with to ensure expectations are understood and documented.
	Levels of service are defined with consideration of these requirements.
	Performance against defined Levels of Service is reported annually.
We provide infrastructure to support District growth. We will evaluate new assets prior to their creation or vesting, to ensure they are economic to operate and maintain.	Spatial planning is undertaken to align infrastructure provision to growth.
	Where appropriate design/engineering standards provide for the lowest lifecycle cost (i.e. through the EES review).
We will ensure that asset management drives funding requirements, with planning using a 'bottom up' approach (that is, the funding will not drive asset management practice). Where funding to meet asset management requirements is not achievable, we will include a gap analysis of asset management requirements vs what can be achieved with the available funding.	AMP budgets (operations and capital) are prepared based on actual requirements to provide the defined Levels of Service.
	AMPs with long term expenditure and funding plans are in place to maintain assets to agreed Levels of Service.
	The Levels of Service impact from differences between AMP funding requirements and annual budgets is explained in the Annual Report.
	Priority is given to maintenance and renewal of existing assets over new assets, except where we've clearly consulted and agreed otherwise with the community.
	Asset network value and annual depreciation is recognized in financial accounts.
We continuously improve our asset knowledge, Asset Systems capability and we continuously review our asset assumptions.	The functionality and appropriateness of the Asset Management System is reviewed, with improvements programmed and budgeted.
	Discrepancies in asset registers are identified and rectified.
	Asset inventories hold condition and performance information to support informed decision-making.
	Asset data is regularly updated. Programmes to improve asset knowledge are developed and budgeted for.
We will prioritise looking after what we have before building new assets, except where we've clearly consulted and agreed otherwise with the community. We will not defer asset maintenance and replacement needs unless there is clear value for the community.	Asset maintenance and renewals are prioritized over new infrastructure.
	If new infrastructure is prioritised over the maintenance and renewal of existing infrastructure, the community should be consulted.
	Forward works programmes within the road corridor are regularly (at least annually) reviewed with renewals aligned to Roading programme where possible.
We ensure personnel are adequately trained to manage our assets.	An Asset Management team structure is developed defining roles and responsibilities.
	Asset Management competency requirements are defined and Asset Management team capability is assessed.
We will develop asset management strategies aligned with this Policy and continuously improve our asset management systems.	Asset Management processes are documented and opportunities for refinement and efficiency are documented.
	AMIS needs are defined and capacity is assessed as suitable.
	The Asset Management System, policies and practices represent global best practice (IIMM) and would support ISO accreditation should Council implement certification following cost benefit analysis.

Asset Management Policy Objectives	Asset Management Actions to Achieve Objectives
	An Asset Management risk register is maintained and actions are identified and evaluated to reduce the highest risks. These are reported to SLT.
	Asset Management Improvement Plans identify pathways to achievement of these Asset Management Objectives.
	Improvement Plans are reviewed quarterly with progress reported to the SLT.
We actively engage with internal stakeholders regarding associated strategies and management practices.	The Asset Management Strategy is communicated to internal stakeholders.

Appendix B: Levels of Service and Performance Measures

Mandatory Performance Measures (MPM) highlighted.

Water

We provide safe high quality drinking water to all our customers					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Whangarei District's four water supply areas have approved Water Safety Plans as determined by a Ministry of Health's Drinking Water Assessor.	4	4	4	4	4
Compliance with the New Zealand drinking-water standards 2005 requirements for bacterial monitoring.	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
Customer's overall satisfaction with the water quality provided by WDC as measured in the annual Customer satisfaction survey. (excludes 'don't knows')	95%	95%	95%	95%	95%
The extent to which the local authority's drinking water supply complies with: (a) bacteria compliance criteria and (b) protozoal compliance criteria.	Fully complies	Fully complies	Fully complies	Fully complies	Fully complies
The total number of complaints received by the local authority about any of the following: (a) drinking water clarity (b) drinking water taste (c) drinking water odour (d) drinking water pressure or flow (e) continuity of supply; and (f) the LA's response to any of these issues expressed per 1000 connections to the LAs networked reticulation system	17	17	17	17	17
Where the local authority attends a callout in response to a fault or unplanned interruption to its networked reticulation system, the following median response times measured: (a) attendance for urgent callouts: from the time the LA received notification to the time service personnel reach the site (b) resolution of urgent callouts: from the time the LA received notification to the time that service personnel confirm resolution of the fault or interruption (c) attendance for non-urgent callouts: from the time that the LA receives notification to the time that service personnel reach the site; and (d) resolution of non-urgent callouts: from the time that the LA receives notification to the time that service personnel confirm resolution of the fault or interruption.	a) less than 1hr b) less than 4hrs c) less than 12hrs d)less than 24 hrs	a) less than 1hr b) less than 4hrs c) less than 12hrs d)less than 24 hrs	a) less than 1hr b) less than 4hrs c) less than 12hrs d)less than 24 hrs	a) less than 1hr b) less than 4hrs c) less than 12hrs d)less than 24 hrs	a) less than 1hr b) less than 4hrs c) less than 12hrs d)less than 24 hrs
The water supplied is continuous and is adequate for customers' use					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Customer's satisfaction with the water flow and pressure provided by WDC as measured in the annual Customer satisfaction survey.	95%	95%	95%	95%	95%

In times of emergency there is adequate water supply available.

Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Whangarei City Water Supply Area has the ability to meet a 1 in 50 year drought. (based on 2009/10 event data adjusted for growth and losses)	83%	81%	79%	79%	79%
Water restrictions imposed due to drought	New	0	0	0	0

We manage the water supply system in a sustainable way that also caters for growth

Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Residents in the District annually adopt water conservation techniques in their homes and/or businesses. (as measured in the annual Customer satisfaction survey)	New	65%	65%	65%	65%
Water restrictions imposed due to drought	New	0	0	0	0
The percentage of real water loss from the local authority's networked reticulation system (including a description of the methodology used to calculate this). WaterNZ Benchloss	Less than 25%	Less than 25%	Less than 25%	Less than 25%	Less than 25%
Average annual consumption per ordinary use connection per day	Less than 500 litres	Less than 500 litres	Less than 500 litres	Less than 500 litres	Less than 500 litres

Wastewater

Council will collect, treat and dispose of wastewater through a reliable wastewater network which is managed to ensure blockages, breaks or spillages are kept to a minimum.

Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Compliance with Territorial Authority (TA) resource consents for discharge from its sewerage system measured by the number of: (a) abatement notices (b) infringement notices (c) enforcement orders, and (d) convictions.	0	0	0	0	0
The number of dry weather sewerage overflows from the TA's sewerage system, expressed per 1000 sewerage connections to that sewerage system.	≤1.35	≤1.35	≤1.35	≤1.35	≤1.35
Residents' satisfaction with sewerage reticulation, treatment and disposal services.	70%	70%	70%	70%	70%
The total number of complaints received by the TA about any of the following: (a) sewage odour (b) sewerage system faults (c) sewerage system blockages; and (d) the TA's response to issues with its sewerage system expressed per 1000 connections to the TA's sewerage system.	<20	<20	<20	<20	<20

Where the TA attends to sewerage overflows resulting from a blockage or other fault in the TA's sewerage system, the following median response times measured:					
(a) attendance time: from the time that the TA receives notification to the time that service personnel reach the site; and	≤1 hr	≤1 hr	≤1 hr	≤1 hr	≤1 hr
(b) resolution time: from the time that the TA receives notification to the time that service personnel confirm resolution of the blockage or other fault.	≤7 hr	≤7 hr	≤7 hr	≤7 hr	≤7 hr
Council will provide well maintained and accessible public toilets in high use areas.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Residents' satisfaction with public toilets.	>75%	>75%	>75%	>75%	>75%

Stormwater

Council will provide a stormwater network that minimises flood risks and environmental impacts.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
5.1.1 Compliance with the territorial authority's (TA) resource consents for discharge from its stormwater system, measured by the number of: (a) abatement notices (b) infringement notices (c) enforcement orders; and (d) convictions received by the TA in relation to those resource consents.	0	0	0	0	0
5.1.2 Residents' satisfaction with stormwater drainage service.	70%	70%	70%	70%	70%
5.1.3 The number of complaints received by a TA about the performance of its stormwater system, expressed per 1000 properties connected to the TA's stormwater system.	16	16	16	16	16
5.1.4 (a) The number of flooding events ^a that occur in a TA district; and (b) for each flooding event ^a , the number of habitable floors affected. ^b expressed per 1000 properties connected to the TA's stormwater system.	0 0	0 0	0 0	0 0	0 0
5.1.5 The median response time to attend a flooding event, measured from the time that the TA receives notification to the time service personnel reach the site. ^a	≤1 hr	≤1 hr	≤1 hr	≤1 hr	≤1 hr
Notes ^a A flooding event means an overflow of stormwater from a territorial authority's stormwater system that enters a habitable floor (Department of Internal Affairs, 2014). It does not therefore apply outside declared stormwater service areas, or to non-habitable structures such as garages and sheds, or to flooding of yards. ^b While all flooding events will be recorded as per DIA requirements, the <u>target</u> is immunity from storm events with an annual exceedance probability (AEP) of more than 2% (1 in 50 year ARI). This is consistent with District Plan rules for minimum floor level.					

Transportation

The District's roading network will be maintained in a satisfactory condition and in accordance with national safety and engineering standards.

Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
The change from the previous financial year in the number of fatalities and serious injury crashes on local road network, expressed as a number.	0	0	0	0	0
Residents' satisfaction with the roading network.	≥61%	≥61%	≥61%	≥61%	≥61%
The average quality of a ride on a sealed local road network, measured by smooth travel exposure.	≥87%	≥87%	≥87%	≥87%	≥87%
The percentage of the sealed local road network that is resurfaced.	≥8%	≥8%	≥8%	≥8%	≥8%
The percentage of the sealed local road network that is rehabilitated.	1.0%	1.0%	1.0%	1.0%	1.0%
The percentage of customer service requests relating to roads and footpaths to which the territorial authority responds within the time frame specified in the Long Term Plan. Note: this is not stated in the District Plan.	≥95%	≥95%	≥95%	≥95%	≥95%
The number of journeys impacted by unplanned events.	TBC	TBC	TBC	TBC	TBC

We will support alternative transport methods.

Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
The percentage of footpaths within a territorial authority district that fall within the level of service or service standard for the condition of footpaths that is set out in the territorial authority's relevant document (such as its annual plan, activity management plan, asset management plan, annual works programme or long term plan).	≥ 80% in fair or better condition	≥ 80% in fair or better condition	≥ 80% in fair or better condition	≥ 80% in fair or better condition	≥ 80% in fair or better condition

Travel times in and around the network will be predictable and disruptions to the network will be well managed and communicated.

Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Residents' satisfaction with the way the District is managing its morning and evening traffic flows.	≥70%	≥70%	≥70%	≥70%	≥70%

Flood Protection

Council will provide a reliable and sustainable flood protection scheme, which is managed to mitigate flooding within the Hikurangi Swamp Scheme area to an acceptable level.

Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
---------------------	----------------	----------------	----------------	----------------	----------------

6.1.1 The major flood protection and control works that are maintained, repaired and renewed to the key standards defined in the local authority's relevant planning documents (such as its activity management plan, asset management plan, annual works programme or long term plan).	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
6.1.2 The number of infringement or abatement notices issued by Northland Regional Council in relation to the scheme consent.	0	0	0	0	0

Solid Waste

Council will provide kerbside refuse and recycling collection services to all properties in the District and transfer stations will be operated throughout the District.

Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Residents' satisfaction with solid waste collection and recycling services and transfer stations.	85%	85%	85%	85%	85%

Council will reduce the amount of waste disposal to landfill per person each year.

Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Waste disposal to landfill per person will reduce each year.				<500	<500
Tonnage collected from Council recycling will increase by 1% each year.	≥1%	≥1%	≥1%	≥1%	≥1%
Council will recycle at least 35% of waste collected at the roadside from households.		≥35%	≥35%	≥35%	≥35%
Council will recycle, compost or reuse at least 50% of materials at transfer stations by 2020.			≥50%	≥50%	≥50%

Council will reduce illegal dumping.

Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Residents' satisfaction with litter control.	≥75%	≥75%	≥75%	≥75%	≥75%

Parks and Recreation

Council will provide and maintain outdoor sporting facilities to support and promote active recreation of the community through participation in both organised and informal sporting activities.

Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Sports parks will be provided to meet the community's needs.*	177hrs	181 hrs	181 hrs	181 hrs	184 hrs

Council will provide and maintain a range of reserves, including built facilities, to meet the needs of the community as well as protecting and enhancing the natural environment.

Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
---------------------	----------------	----------------	----------------	----------------	----------------

Average satisfaction rating of sports' codes with sports' parks.	82%	84%	84%	85%	86%
Residents' satisfaction with neighbourhood, civic space, cultural heritage, public gardens, and recreational and ecological linkages to parks.	82%	83%	84%	85%	86%
Council will convert or upgrade identified existing open spaces to provide a wider range of high quality recreational and leisure opportunities within the District for our community and visitors.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Hectares of open space land transformed does not drop below**	0.5ha	0.5 ha	0.5 ha	0.5 ha	0.5 ha
Residents' perception that Council is making sufficient investment in developing a strong sense of place for the District and its communities.	70%	70%	70%	70%	70%
Council will provide and maintain cemeteries and a crematorium in a satisfactory manner.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Residents' satisfaction with cemeteries.	90%	90%	90%	90%	90%

Attachment: Council Activities

Activity Profiles

Introduction

Council's work is grouped into nine key activities in this Long Term Plan:

Activity number	Group of activities	Activity
1	Transportation	Transportation
2	Water	Water
3	Solid Waste	Solid Waste
4	Wastewater	Wastewater
5	Stormwater	Stormwater
6	Flood Protection and Control Works	Hikurangi Flood Protection Scheme
7	Community Facilities and Services	Parks and Recreation
		Community Services
		Libraries
		Venues and Events
		Community Property
		Customer Services
8	Planning and Regulatory Services	Policy and Monitoring
		Building Compliance
		Resource Consents
		Regulatory Services
		Support Services
9	Governance and Strategy	Democracy and Assurance
		Strategy
		Maori Relationships

The information provided about each of the nine activities includes:

- purpose and strategic fit across the organisation
- how it relates to the Community Outcomes
- the money we have budgeted for the activity in the next year
- Levels of Service (what Council will provide and to what extent)
- performance measures and targets for 2018-28 (how you will be able to tell whether we have done what we said we would do).

The performance measures and targets will be used to report Council's achievements back to the community in the Annual Report.

1. Transportation

Purpose and Strategic Fit

The ease of movement of people and goods is of critical importance to our thriving District. The way we move supports economic transactions, growth and development, social cohesion, health and the day-to-day running of our communities. It is one of the most important functions we provide.

Strategically, as a core service it is important that our transport network is efficient and provides choice. It recognises that, in certain parts of the network, pedestrians and cyclists are the priority. As our District grows, public transport will become more important.

An integrated, safe, responsive, and sustainable land transport system is a fundamental requirement of every district council under the Local Government Act 2002. We are the road-controlling authority for the District and we are responsible for planning, creating, operating, maintaining and rehabilitating all roads (except State Highways) in a financially responsible manner.

Potential negative effects

Transportation activities contribute to a number of negative environmental effects including water quality, air quality, noise and safety-related issues. However, all activities are undertaken in accordance with environmental standards. We invest in walking and cycling to help reduce some of these impacts.

Contribution to Community Outcomes

Community Outcome	How it contributes
Efficient and resilient core services <ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is easy and safe for everyone to travel around the District There are opportunities to walk and cycle The District is well prepared for growth, and can adapt to change Services are supplied in ways that benefit the environment. 	<p>A transportation network is provided that enables a range of transport options to facilitate easy and safe travel around the District.</p> <p>Transportation also provides safe and connected walking and cycling opportunities.</p> <p>Road, footpath and cycle networks are managed and planned in a way that ensures it aligns with our District's growth and is supplied in an efficient way.</p>
Caring for the environment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Communities work to keep the environment clean and healthy Access to the coast for people is protected Open spaces in parks and streets are places where nature thrives The District is positively adapting to climate change. 	<p>Street design and landscaping can contribute to our natural environment, particularly in urban areas.</p> <p>Future transport infrastructure will recognise the need to adapt to effects of climate change.</p> <p>Walking and cycling can help to protect our environment. They also have significant health and wellbeing benefits.</p>
Positive about the future <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The District has productive land and people, and a thriving City centre There is a fair urban/rural balance Council has clear and simple documents and rules The District embraces new technology and opportunity. 	<p>Our transport network is of strategic importance to our future prosperity. Our roads are used by residents to get to and from work, by business to transport goods and by visitors to travel around our District.</p>

Proud to be local <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The District is neat and tidy, and looks attractive. Public areas feel and are safe There is always something to do and see There are opportunities for people of all abilities, ages and life stages to be active. 	<p>Maintenance of our local streets helps the District look neat and tidy.</p> <p>The quality design of our streets can make our District safe and more attractive.</p>
---	---

☒ High Contribution
 ☐ Medium Contribution

Levels of Service

Mandatory Performance Measures

1.1 The District's roading network will be maintained in a satisfactory condition and in accordance with national safety and engineering standards.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
The change from the previous financial year in the number of fatalities and serious injury crashes on local road network, expressed as a number.	0	0	0	0	0
Residents' satisfaction with the roading network.	≥61%	≥61%	≥61%	≥61%	≥61%
The average quality of a ride on a sealed local road network, measured by smooth travel exposure.	≥87%	≥87%	≥87%	≥87%	≥87%
The percentage of the sealed local road network that is resurfaced.	≥8%	≥8%	≥8%	≥8%	≥8%
The percentage of the sealed local road network that is rehabilitated. The percentage of customer service requests relating to roads and footpaths to which the territorial authority responds within the time frame specified in the Long Term Plan. Note: this is not stated in the District Plan.	1.0% ≥95%	1.0% ≥95%	1.0% ≥95%	1.0% ≥95%	1.0% ≥95%
The number of journeys impacted by unplanned events.	TBC	TBC	TBC	TBC	TBC

1.2 We will support alternative transport methods.

Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
The percentage of footpaths within a territorial authority district that fall within the level of service or service standard for the condition of footpaths that is set out in the territorial authority's relevant document (such as its annual plan, activity management plan, asset management plan, annual works programme or long term plan).	≥ 80% in fair or better condition	≥ 80% in fair or better condition	≥ 80% in fair or better condition	≥ 80% in fair or better condition	≥ 80% in fair or better condition

1.3 Travel times in and around the network will be predictable and disruptions to the network will be well managed and communicated.

Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Residents' satisfaction with the way the District is managing its morning and evening traffic flows.	≥70%	≥70%	≥70%	≥70%	≥70%

Changes to Levels of Service

Changes to the Levels of Service and performance measures recognise a need for clear and definable measures that more accurately define the expected outcome and target.

Funding Impact Statement

Transportation	Annual Plan 2017 - 18 \$000	Year 1 2018 - 19 \$000	Year 2 2019 - 20 \$000	Year 3 2020 - 21 \$000	Year 4 2021 - 22 \$000	Year 5 2022 - 23 \$000	Year 6 2023 - 24 \$000	Year 7 2024 - 25 \$000	Year 8 2025 - 26 \$000	Year 9 2026 - 27 \$000	Year 10 2027 - 28 \$000
Sources of Operating Funding											
General rates, uniform annual general charges, rates penalties	14,903	15,161	16,728	17,343	17,588	22,287	23,641	25,010	26,283	28,384	30,367
Targeted rates	35	34	34	34	34	34	34	34	34	34	34
Subsidies and grants for operating purposes	6,569	6,933	7,244	7,560	7,799	8,053	8,282	8,559	8,853	9,156	9,536
Fees and charges	2,540	1,883	1,930	2,085	2,028	2,081	2,249	2,193	2,255	2,441	2,395
Internal charges and overheads recovered	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Local authorities fuel tax, fines, infringement fees and other receipts	3,145	2,849	2,901	2,953	3,007	3,064	3,123	3,186	3,253	3,322	3,399
Total Operating Funding	27,193	26,860	28,837	29,974	30,456	35,519	37,329	38,981	40,677	43,337	45,731
Applications of Operating Funding											
Payments to staff and suppliers	16,114	16,717	17,250	17,821	18,350	18,922	19,520	20,028	20,687	21,494	22,199
Finance Costs	4,164	4,673	4,616	4,308	4,390	4,431	4,434	4,392	4,285	4,439	4,529
Internal charges and overheads applied	1,603	1,155	1,275	1,293	1,406	1,456	1,499	1,524	1,548	1,574	1,608
Other operating funding applications	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total Applications of Operating Funding	21,882	22,545	23,141	23,422	24,146	24,809	25,453	25,944	26,520	27,507	28,336
Surplus / (Deficit) of Operating Funding	5,311	4,315	5,695	6,552	6,310	10,710	11,875	13,037	14,156	15,830	17,395
Sources of Capital Funding											
Subsidies and grants for capital expenditure	13,312	11,672	12,493	12,009	12,492	12,681	12,914	13,811	17,041	17,925	19,261
Development and financial contributions	1,277	1,957	2,022	2,089	2,157	2,114	2,163	2,214	2,270	2,327	2,387
Increase / (decrease) in debt	4,340	6,703	10,073	4,890	6,196	1,173	350	3,108	724	5,402	2,663
Gross proceeds from sale of assets	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other dedicated capital funding	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Lump sum contributions	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total Sources of Capital Funding	18,929	20,332	24,587	18,987	20,845	15,968	15,427	19,133	20,035	25,653	24,311
Applications of Capital Funding											
Capital expenditure											
to meet additional demand	4,341	3,227	3,897	3,235	3,322	3,478	3,283	4,733	7,302	14,075	13,975
to improve levels of service	5,799	3,820	4,764	3,448	3,116	3,512	2,681	3,299	4,757	5,126	5,231
to replace existing assets	15,800	16,778	16,764	17,439	18,632	19,057	19,675	20,280	21,448	21,894	22,844
Increase / (decrease) in reserves	(1,700)	821	4,858	1,416	2,085	630	1,662	3,858	683	387	(343)
Increase / (decrease) of investments	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total Applications of Capital Funding	24,240	24,646	30,283	25,539	27,155	26,677	27,302	32,170	34,191	41,483	41,706
Surplus / (Deficit) of Capital Funding	(5,311)	(4,315)	(5,695)	(6,552)	(6,310)	(10,710)	(11,875)	(13,037)	(14,156)	(15,830)	(17,395)
Funding Balance	(0)	0	(0)	0	0	-	-	-	-	-	-

Capital Works

Transportation Programme	Project	LTP Year 1 2018/19 \$000	LTP Year 2 2019/20 \$000	LTP Year 3 2020/21 \$000	LTP Year 4-6 2021/22- 2023/24 \$000	LTP Year 7-10 2024/25- 2027/28 \$000
Amenity Lighting	Amenity Lighting	-	-	97	307	453
Bus Shelters	Bus Shelters	92	94	96	301	436
Bus Terminal	Bus Terminal Development/Relocation	-	-	320	-	-
Coastal Protection	Coastal Protection Structures - Roding	82	84	86	273	403
Cycleways – Subsidised	Cycleways - Programmed Work	2,772	3,182	2,144	5,279	2,423
Footpaths	Footpaths Renewals	355	372	390	1,298	2,001
Footpaths	New Footpaths	408	417	426	1,337	1,938
Minor Improvements to Roding Network	Minor Improvements to Network	6,610	5,217	5,358	15,612	23,064
Other Roding Projects	McEwan Road Upgrade	-	-	-	-	1,272
Other Roding Projects	One Tree Point Road Upgrade	-	-	-	-	1,004
Other Roding Projects	Port Road Upgrade	-	-	-	-	8,676
Other Roding Projects	Riverside Drive/Onerahi Road Upgrade	-	-	-	-	24,561
Other Roding Projects	Ruakaka Beach Road Upgrade	-	-	-	-	1,875
Parking	Parking Renewals	224	230	237	750	1,108

Roading Drainage	Drainage Renewals	1,081	1,110	1,141	3,613	5,338
Roading Subdivision Works Contribution	Subdivision Works Contribution	51	52	53	167	242
Seal Extensions	Seal Extensions - Unsubsidised	1,032	1,061	-	891	2,417
Sealed Road Pavement Rehabilitation	Sealed Road Pavement Rehabilitation	3,978	4,134	4,296	13,922	21,367
Sealed Road Resurfacing	Sealed Road Resurfacing	4,182	4,346	4,516	14,635	22,463
Sense of Place	Community-Led Development	-	-	297	312	-
Structures Component Replacement	Structures Component Replacement	1,020	1,048	1,076	3,409	5,036
Traffic Signs and Signals	Traffic Sign and Signal Renewals	867	890	915	2,897	4,280
Transportation Planning Studies & Strategies	Transport Planning Studies & Strategies	255	261	213	444	359
Unsealed Road Metalling	Unsealed Road Metalling	816	840	864	6,296	9,403
Urban Intersection Upgrades	Urban Intersection Upgrades	-	2,085	1,598	5,013	4,846
	Transportation Total	23,825	25,425	24,123	76,757	144,965

2. Water

Purpose and Strategic Fit

We provide fresh, clean, healthy water to our District. This core service is essential for our District to thrive and to be vibrant. Our water supply provides water for households to drink and use and it plays an important role in many industrial, commercial and some agricultural businesses. Water is also provided to fight fires within the spread of our network. The water is delivered via a network of treatment plants, reservoirs, pump stations and pipelines.

Strategically, the focus for the future is on the quality and resilience of this service. We provide water that meets the necessary Ministry of Health standards. We also ensure our water supply is resilient to change through water efficiency programmes and infrastructure upgrades.

Potential negative effects

Provision of water can contribute to a number of negative environmental effects through the abstraction of water from bores and dams. However, all activities are undertaken in accordance with environmental standards. We invest in new technology and methods to assist in reducing some of these environmental impacts.

Contribution to Community Outcomes

Community Outcome	How it contributes
Efficient and resilient core services <ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is easy and safe for everyone to travel around the District There are opportunities to walk and cycle The District is well prepared for growth, and can adapt to change Services are supplied in ways that benefit the environment. 	<p>The provision of water is a core service. It supports our communities and our commercial, industrial and agricultural activities.</p> <p>Water is supplied in a planned, managed and efficient way to ensure it aligns with our District's growth.</p>
Caring for the environment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Communities work to keep the environment clean and healthy Access to the coast for people is protected Open spaces in parks and streets are places where nature thrives The District is positively adapting to climate change. 	<p>The management of our water supply can support a clean and healthy environment through initiatives such as water conservation.</p>
Positive about the future <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The District has productive land and people, and a thriving City centre There is a fair urban/rural balance Council has clear and simple documents and rules The District embraces new technology and opportunity. 	<p>New technology will be used to monitor to the quality of our drinking water.</p> <p>The provision of water to appropriate locations across urban and rural areas of the District enables productivity.</p>

■ High Contribution □ Medium Contribution

Levels of Service

Mandatory Performance Measure (MPM)

We provide safe, high-quality drinking water to all our customers					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Whangarei District's four water supply areas have approved Water Safety Plans as determined by a Ministry of Health Drinking Water Assessor.	4	4	4	4	4
Compliance with the 2005 New Zealand Drinking Water Standards' requirements for bacterial monitoring.	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
Customer's overall satisfaction with the water quality provided by WDC as measured in the annual Customer Satisfaction Survey (excludes 'don't knows').	95%	95%	95%	95%	95%
The extent to which the local authority's (LA) drinking water supply complies with: (a) bacteria compliance criteria; and (b) protozoal compliance criteria.	Fully complies	Fully complies	Fully complies	Fully complies	Fully complies
The total number of complaints received by the local authority about any of the following: (a) drinking water clarity (b) drinking water taste (c) drinking water odour (d) drinking water pressure or flow (e) continuity of supply; and (f) the LA's response to any of these issues expressed per 1000 connections to the LA's networked reticulation system.	17	17	17	17	17
Where the local authority (LA) attends a callout in response to a fault or unplanned interruption to its networked reticulation system, the following median response times measured: (a) attendance for urgent callouts: from the time the LA received notification to the time service personnel reach the site (b) resolution of urgent callouts: from the time the LA received notification to the time	a) less than 1hr b) less than 4hrs c) less than 12hrs	a) less than 1hr b) less than 4hrs c) less than 12hrs	a) less than 1hr b) less than 4hrs c) less than 12hrs	a) less than 1hr b) less than 4hrs c) less than 12hrs	a) less than 1hr b) less than 4hrs c) less than 12hrs

that service personnel confirm resolution of the fault or interruption (c) attendance for non-urgent callouts: from the time that the LA receives notification to the time that service personnel reach the site; and (d) resolution of non-urgent callouts: from the time that the LA receives notification to the time that service personnel confirm resolution of the fault or interruption.	d) less than 24 hrs	d) less than 24 hrs	d) less than 24 hrs	d) less than 24 hrs	d) less than 24 hrs
--	---------------------	---------------------	---------------------	---------------------	---------------------

The water supplied is continuous and is adequate for customers' use.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Customer's satisfaction with the water flow and pressure provided by WDC as measured in the annual Customer Satisfaction Survey.	95%	95%	95%	95%	95%

In times of emergency there is adequate water supply available.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Whangarei City Water Supply Area has the ability to meet a 1 in 50-year drought. (based on 2009/10 event data adjusted for growth and losses).	83%	81%	79%	79%	79%
Water restrictions imposed due to drought.	New	0	0	0	0

We manage the water supply system in a sustainable way that also caters for growth.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Residents in the District annually adopt water conservation techniques in their homes and/or businesses (as measured in the annual Customer Satisfaction Survey).	New	65%	65%	65%	65%
Water restrictions imposed due to drought.	New	0	0	0	0

The percentage of real water loss from the local authority's networked reticulation system (including a description of the methodology used to calculate this). WaterNZ Benchloss	Less than 25%	Less than 25%	Less than 25%	Less than 25%	Less than 25%
Average annual consumption per ordinary use connection per day.	Less than 500 litres	Less than 500 litres	Less than 500 litres	Less than 500 litres	Less than 500 litres

Changes to Levels of Service

The Levels of Service have been amended to separate out the aspects of service. An additional response to customer statement has been added:

- We provide safe, high-quality drinking water to all our customers
- The water supplied is continuous and the pressure is adequate for customers' use
- We respond promptly to customer requests
- In times of emergency there is available supply
- We manage the water supply system in a sustainable way that also caters for growth.

Funding Impact Statement

Water	Annual Plan 2017 - 18 \$000	Year 1 2018 - 19 \$000	Year 2 2019 - 20 \$000	Year 3 2020 - 21 \$000	Year 4 2021 - 22 \$000	Year 5 2022 - 23 \$000	Year 6 2023 - 24 \$000	Year 7 2024 - 25 \$000	Year 8 2025 - 26 \$000	Year 9 2026 - 27 \$000	Year 10 2027 - 28 \$000
Sources of Operating Funding											
General rates, uniform annual general charges, rates penalties	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Targeted rates	14,069	14,621	14,661	14,761	14,862	14,964	15,068	15,172	15,279	15,387	15,497
Subsidies and grants for operating purposes	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Fees and charges	363	387	395	404	413	423	432	443	454	465	477
Internal charges and overheads recovered	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Local authorities fuel tax, fines, infringement fees and other receipts	1,227	1,404	1,354	830	834	684	655	593	225	-	1
Total Operating Funding	15,658	16,412	16,411	15,996	16,109	16,070	16,154	16,208	15,958	15,852	15,975
Applications of Operating Funding											
Payments to staff and suppliers	6,615	7,180	7,286	7,452	7,554	7,758	7,932	8,117	8,361	8,541	8,767
Finance Costs	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	15	135	147
Internal charges and overheads applied	2,711	2,173	2,336	2,371	2,581	2,636	2,709	2,788	2,801	2,849	2,943
Other operating funding applications	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total Applications of Operating Funding	9,327	9,352	9,622	9,824	10,135	10,394	10,642	10,905	11,177	11,525	11,857
Surplus / (Deficit) of Operating Funding	6,331	7,060	6,789	6,172	5,974	5,677	5,512	5,303	4,781	4,327	4,117
Sources of Capital Funding											
Subsidies and grants for capital expenditure	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Development and financial contributions	616	944	975	1,007	1,040	1,019	1,043	1,068	1,095	1,122	1,151
Increase / (decrease) in debt	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	4,782	5,270	2,026
Gross proceeds from sale of assets	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other dedicated capital funding	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Lump sum contributions	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total Sources of Capital Funding	616	944	975	1,007	1,040	1,019	1,043	1,068	5,876	6,392	3,177
Applications of Capital Funding											
Capital expenditure											
to meet additional demand	-	2,196	5,665	890	2,099	1,140	203	1,563	4,377	3,812	1,905
to improve levels of service	-	2,155	5,016	2,003	5,050	2,545	336	1,928	1,878	1,606	504
to replace existing assets	3,705	4,686	8,321	4,724	3,629	4,311	8,052	11,546	6,056	5,301	4,885
Increase / (decrease) in reserves	3,242	(1,034)	(11,239)	(438)	(3,764)	(1,300)	(2,035)	(8,666)	(1,654)	-	-
Increase / (decrease) of investments	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total Applications of Capital Funding	6,947	8,004	7,764	7,179	7,014	6,696	6,555	6,371	10,657	10,719	7,294
Surplus / (Deficit) of Capital Funding	(6,331)	(7,060)	(6,789)	(6,172)	(5,974)	(5,677)	(5,512)	(5,303)	(4,781)	(4,327)	(4,117)
Funding Balance	(0)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	(0)	-	-

Capital Works

Water Programme	Project	LTP Year 1 2018/19 \$000	LTP Year 2 2019/20 \$000	LTP Year 3 2020/21 \$000	LTP Year 4-6 2021/22- 2023/24 \$000	LTP Year 7-10 2024/25- 2027/28 \$000
Property	Water Property Renewals	49	94	-	-	-
Wairua River Source and Treatment	Wairua River Source and Treatment	-	-	-	114	15,890
Water Meters	Water Meter Renewals	357	365	373	1,170	1,696
Water Reservoirs	Fairway Reservoir Renewal	-	-	-	-	828
Water Reservoirs	Kamo Reservoir Additional Capacity	-	-	213	2,000	-
Water Reservoirs	Maungakaramaea Reservoir Additional Capacity	-	-	-	182	700
Water Reservoirs	Reservoir Rehabilitation - Programmed Work	214	188	107	917	326
Water Reservoirs	Three Mile Bush Reservoir Additional Capacity	-	156	213	1,878	-
Water Reservoirs	Waipu Reservoir Additional Capacity	-	-	107	1,089	-
Water Reticulation	Fairway Drive Pump Station Upgrade	-	-	533	-	-
Water Reticulation	Minor Projects - Emergency Works	306	313	320	1,003	1,454
Water Reticulation	Reticulation - Programmed Work	1,051	2,137	3,249	11,630	17,714
Water Reticulation	Trunkmain Condition Assessments	61	-	-	-	-
Water Reticulation	Waipu Water Reticulation	71	730	-	-	-
Water Treatment Plants	SCADA Upgrade	408	1,042	-	-	-
Water Treatment Plants	Treatment Plant Renewals	-	-	-	570	3,733

Water Treatment Plants	Treatment Plant Upgrades	20	21	75	2,638	-
Water Treatment Plants	Water Treatment Plant and Equipment Replacement	510	521	533	1,671	2,423
Whau Valley Dam Improvements	Dam Asset and Equipment Renewals	-	-	-	-	598
Whau Valley Dam Improvements	Dam Safety Review	10	-	43	33	110
Whau Valley Dam Improvements	Whau Valley Dam Chimney Drain	-	-	320	2,504	-
Whau Valley Water Treatment Plant	Whau Valley New Water Treatment Plant	6,120	13,551	1,598	-	-
	Water total	9,178	19,118	7,681	27,398	45,751

3. Solid Waste

Purpose and Strategic Fit

We collect, process, dispose and recycle solid waste in our District. This core service is essential for keeping our District attractive and vibrant. This service also supports our District's economic activities and therefore supports our growth and development.

Our aim is to do this in a way that, over time, will reduce the amount of waste we are required to process. Waste management is required to meet the requirements of several pieces of legislation, including the Waste Minimisation Act (WMA) 2008, the New Zealand Waste Strategy 2010 and the Local Government Act 2002.

Potential negative effects

Waste can have negative effects on air, land and water. To mitigate these effects, we comply with consents relating to the operation of our transfer station network. The volumes of rubbish disposed are minimised through effective recycling.

If not appropriately collected and disposed of, solid waste can have significant negative effects on public health. To mitigate negative effects, Council has a reliable collection service and transfer station network available across the District.

Contribution to Community Outcomes

Community Outcome	How it contributes
Efficient and resilient core services <ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is easy and safe for everyone to travel around the District There are opportunities to walk and cycle The District is well prepared for growth, and can adapt to change Services are supplied in ways that benefit the environment. 	Solid waste is managed and planned in a way that ensures it aligns with our District's growth and is supplied in an efficient way.
Caring for the environment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Communities work to keep the environment clean and healthy Access to the coast for people is protected Open spaces in parks and streets are places where nature thrives The District is positively adapting to climate change. 	Waste minimisation, recycling and waste collection limits potential adverse effects on our environment.
Proud to be local <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The District is neat and tidy, and looks attractive. Public areas feel and are safe There is always something to do and see There are opportunities for people of all abilities, ages and life stages to be active. 	A clean environment across our District is vital to our wellbeing as well as our attractiveness to visitors and investors.

■ High Contribution □ Medium Contribution

Levels of service

Highlight Mandatory Performance Measures

3.1 Council will provide kerbside refuse and recycling collection services to all properties in the District and transfer stations will be operated throughout the District.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Residents' satisfaction with solid waste collection and recycling services and transfer stations.	85%	85%	85%	85%	85%

3.2 Council will reduce the amount of waste disposal to landfill per person each year.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Waste disposal to landfill per person will reduce each year.				<500	<500
Tonnage collected from Council recycling will increase by 1% each year.	≥1%	≥1%	≥1%	≥1%	≥1%
Council will recycle at least 35% of waste collected at the roadside from households.		≥35%	≥35%	≥35%	≥35%
Council will recycle, compost or reuse at least 50% of materials at transfer stations by 2020.			≥50%	≥50%	≥50%

3.3 Council will reduce illegal dumping.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Residents' satisfaction with litter control.	≥75%	≥75%	≥75%	≥75%	≥75%

Changes to Levels of Service

The waste reduction target is more representative when calculated for the entire District rather than just for kerbside collections. Where possible, the targets avoid the effects of population growth but they will be factored into results, where necessary. Target levels of service have been consulted through consultation on the Waste Management and Minimisation Plan 2017.

Funding Impact Statement

[illegible]

Capital Works

Solid Waste Programme	Project	LTP Year 1 2018/19 \$000	LTP Year 2 2019/20 \$000	LTP Year 3 2020/21 \$000	LTP Year 4-6 2021/22- 2023/24 \$000	LTP Year 7-10 2024/25- 2027/28 \$000
Transfer Stations	Transfer Station Renewals	-	-	-	168	123
Transfer Stations	Transfer Station Upgrades	102	-	53	56	120
	Solid Waste Total	102		53	224	242

4. Wastewater

Purpose and Strategic Fit

Wastewater management is a core service that keeps our communities safe, healthy and clean. Strategically, this is an essential service if we are to be a vibrant, attractive and thriving District.

Collectively, our population produces a large amount of wastewater every year. Our job is to develop and manage the systems to collect this wastewater, and treat and dispose of it in a way that meets a range of legal standards. This protects the health and wellbeing of our communities, and of the environment.

Our wastewater network (sewerage system) comprises wastewater systems and treatment plants, and processes wastewater from over 23,000 connections across the District. We also provide a network of public toilets that contribute to the wellbeing of visitors as well as the local community.

Potential negative effects

Sewage discharges to air, land and water affect the receiving environment and public health. Council has invested in targeted programmes to prevent and mitigate the effects of treated and untreated sewage discharges. We have also implemented an ISO 9001 certified system for effective management of the wastewater network. Compliance with resource consent conditions ensures adverse effects to the environment are avoided, mitigated or remedied.

Contribution to Community Outcomes

Community Outcome	How it contributes
Efficient and resilient core services <ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is easy and safe for everyone to travel around the District There are opportunities to walk and cycle The District is well prepared for growth, and can adapt to change Services are supplied in ways that benefit the environment. 	<p>The management of wastewater is a core service. It supports our communities and our commercial, industrial and agricultural activities.</p> <p>Wastewater is managed and planned in a way that ensures it aligns with our District's growth and is supplied in an efficient way.</p>
Caring for the environment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Communities work to keep the environment clean and healthy Access to the coast for people is protected Open spaces in parks and streets are places where nature thrives The District is positively adapting to climate change. 	<p>Managing wastewater to agreed standards, with discharges from wastewater treatment plants having no detrimental environmental impact.</p>
Positive about the future <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The District has productive land and people, and a thriving City centre There is a fair urban/rural balance Council has clear and simple documents and rules The District embraces new technology and opportunity. 	<p>New technology will be used at our wastewater treatment plants, including waste-to-energy processes.</p> <p>The management of wastewater in appropriate locations across urban and rural areas of the District enables productivity.</p>

■ High Contribution □ Medium Contribution

Levels of Service

Highlight Mandatory Performance Measures

4.1 Council will collect, treat and dispose of wastewater through a reliable wastewater network which is managed to ensure blockages, breaks or spillages are kept to a minimum.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Compliance with Territorial Authority (TA) resource consents for discharge from its sewerage system measured by the number of: (a) abatement notices (b) infringement notices (c) enforcement orders, and (d) convictions.	0	0	0	0	0
The number of dry weather sewerage overflows from the TA's sewerage system, expressed per 1000 sewerage connections to that sewerage system.	≤1.35	≤1.35	≤1.35	≤1.35	≤1.35
Residents' satisfaction with sewerage reticulation, treatment and disposal services.	70%	70%	70%	70%	70%
The total number of complaints received by the TA about any of the following: (a) sewage odour (b) sewerage system faults (c) sewerage system blockages; and (d) the TA's response to issues with its sewerage system expressed per 1000 connections to the TA's sewerage system.	<20	<20	<20	<20	<20
Where the TA attends to sewerage overflows resulting from a blockage or other fault in the TA's sewerage system, the following median response times measured: (a) attendance time: from the time that the TA receives notification to the time that service personnel reach the site; and	≤1 hr	≤1 hr	≤1 hr	≤1 hr	≤1 hr

(b) resolution time: from the time that the TA receives notification to the time that service personnel confirm resolution of the blockage or other fault.	≤7 hr	≤7 hr	≤7 hr	≤7 hr	≤7 hr
--	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------

4.2 Council will provide well maintained and accessible public toilets in high use areas.

Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Residents' satisfaction with public toilets.	>75%	>75%	>75%	>75%	>75%

Changes to Levels of Service

Minor adjustments have been made to clarify that the Level of Service applies to defined service areas.

Funding Impact Statement

[illegible]

Capital Works

Wastewater Programme	Project	LTP Year 1 2018/19 \$000	LTP Year 2 2019/20 \$000	LTP Year 3 2020/21 \$000	LTP Year 4-6 2021/22- 2023/24 \$000	LTP Year 7-10 2024/25- 2027/28 \$000
Laboratory	Laboratory Equipment Renewals and Upgrades	20	21	21	67	24
Public Toilets	Public Toilets	-	-	405	642	239
Wastewater Asset Management	Wastewater Assessment	43	44	45	46	-
Wastewater Network	Hikurangi Sewer Network Upgrade	1,020	2,085	-	-	-
Wastewater Network	Sewer Network Renewal	1,020	1,407	5,433	7,686	11,145
Wastewater Network	Sewer Network Upgrades	26	1,222	3,782	14,058	14,830
Wastewater Pump Stations	Wastewater Pump Station Remote Monitoring	133	110	-	-	-
Wastewater Pump Stations	Wastewater Pump Station Renewals	386	405	427	1,532	2,831
Wastewater Treatment Plants	Wastewater Reticulation Upgrade	41	42	43	88	-
Wastewater Treatment Plants	Wastewater Treatment Plant Biogas Generator	153	-	-	-	-
Wastewater Treatment Plants	Wastewater Treatment Plant Renewals	835	862	1,127	4,569	3,349
Wastewater Treatment Plants	Wastewater Treatment Plant Upgrades	505	2,339	4,249	2,126	141
	Wastewater Total	4,181	8,537	15,532	30,814	32,560

5. Stormwater

Purpose and Strategic Fit

Our stormwater network prevents flooding to properties and roads. How we manage stormwater can contribute significantly to vibrant and thriving communities through initiatives such as the Blue / Green Network Strategy.

Stormwater management is a core service and needs to align with the following legislative requirements:

- Assess, from a public health perspective, the adequacy of stormwater services available to communities. This includes the actual or potential consequences of discharges.
- Preparing Catchment Management Plans in accordance with the Northland Regional Plan.
- Adhering to the freshwater quality objectives of the Northland Regional Plan.

Potential negative effects

Inadequate stormwater services have the potential to increase flood damage to property, incurring costs and elevated insurance premiums. This can be mitigated through identification of flood-susceptible land through Catchment Management and District Plans.

Insufficient treatment of stormwater has the potential to adversely affect our environment. This can be addressed through resource consents for stormwater discharges being monitored for compliance against consent conditions. Catchment Management Plans and Environmental Engineering Standards identify issues and specify treatment, respectively, in relation to the stormwater activities.

Contribution to Community Outcomes

Community Outcome	How it contributes
Efficient and resilient core services <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • It is easy and safe for everyone to travel around the District • There are opportunities to walk and cycle • The District is well prepared for growth, and can adapt to change • Services are supplied in ways that benefit the environment. 	<p>The management of stormwater is a core service. It supports our communities as well as enabling commercial, industrial and agricultural activities.</p> <p>Stormwater is managed and planned in a way that ensures it aligns with our District's growth and is supplied in an efficient way.</p>
Caring for the environment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Communities work to keep the environment clean and healthy • Access to the coast for people is protected • Open spaces in parks and streets are places where nature thrives • The District is positively adapting to climate change. 	<p>Investment into infrastructure and natural systems seeks to minimise environmental effects of stormwater run-off into our waterways.</p> <p>Stormwater water management through catchment management plans, resource consents and engineering standards mitigate and manage potential adverse environmental effects.</p>
Positive about the future <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The District has productive land and people, and a thriving City centre • There is a fair urban/rural balance • Council has clear and simple documents and rules • The District embraces new technology and opportunity. 	<p>The management of stormwater in appropriate locations across urban and rural areas of the District enables productivity.</p>

■ High Contribution □ Medium Contribution

Levels of Service

Highlight Mandatory Performance Measures

5.1 Council will provide a stormwater network that minimises flood risks and environmental impacts.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
5.1.1 Compliance with the territorial authority's (TA) resource consents for discharge from its stormwater system, measured by the number of: (a) abatement notices (b) infringement notices (c) enforcement orders; and (d) convictions received by the TA in relation to those resource consents.	0	0	0	0	0
5.1.2 Residents' satisfaction with stormwater drainage service.	70%	70%	70%	70%	70%
5.1.3 The number of complaints received by a TA about the performance of its stormwater system, expressed per 1000 properties connected to the TA's stormwater system.	16	16	16	16	16
5.1.4 (a) The number of flooding events ^a that occur in a TA district; and (b) for each flooding event ^a , the number of habitable floors affected. ^b expressed per 1000 properties connected to the TA's stormwater system.	0 0	0 0	0 0	0 0	0 0
5.1.5 The median response time to attend a flooding event, measured from the time that the TA receives notification to the time service personnel reach the site. ^a	≤1 hr	≤1 hr	≤1 hr	≤1 hr	≤1 hr
<p>Notes</p> <p>^a A flooding event means an overflow of stormwater from a territorial authority's stormwater system that enters a habitable floor (Department of Internal Affairs, 2014). It does not therefore apply outside declared stormwater service areas, or to non-habitable structures such as garages and sheds, or to flooding of yards.</p> <p>^b While all flooding events will be recorded as per DIA requirements, the <u>target</u> is immunity from storm events with an annual exceedance probability (AEP) of more than 2% (1 in 50 year ARI). This is consistent with District Plan rules for minimum floor level.</p>					

Changes to Levels of Service

We are proposing some minor changes to the Level of Service statements to improve clarity.

Funding Impact Statement

[illegible]

Capital Works

Stormwater Programme	Project	LTP Year 1 2018/19 \$000	LTP Year 2 2019/20 \$000	LTP Year 3 2020/21 \$000	LTP Year 4-6 2021/22- 2023/24 \$000	LTP Year 7-10 2024/25- 2027/28 \$000
Stormwater Asset Management	Stormwater Catchment Management Plans & Assessments	352	500	810	2,796	2,624
Stormwater Improvements	Blue/Green Network	-	-	160	1,404	2,035
Stormwater Improvements	Stormwater Renewals	726	1,070	2,254	8,665	21,117
Stormwater Improvements	Stormwater Upgrades	530	290	61	204	77
Stormwater Improvements	Teal Bay Stormwater Improvements	546	-	-	-	-
	Stormwater total	2,154	1,860	3,284	13,069	25,854

6. Flood Protection and Control

Purpose and Strategic Fit

The Hikurangi Flood Protection Scheme helps to minimise flooding across the 5,600 hectares of farmland within the Hikurangi Swamp area.

The aim of the scheme is to protect the farming productivity of land within the swamp area. This is highly productive agricultural land that generates considerable economic benefit to the region.

We are responsible for managing, operating and maintaining the Hikurangi Scheme to ensure the required environmental, cultural and economic results are achieved. The Scheme is funded by targeted rates from properties within the Scheme area.

Potential significant negative effects

The Scheme has little riparian cover, and has the potential to increase sedimentation and nutrient loadings into waterways. To mitigate this, Council has a Scheme Riparian and Oxbow Management Plan detailing remedial works to restore habitat and riparian margins.

The Scheme impacts on the native fish population, specifically eels, by presenting barriers to upstream and downstream migration and causing fish fatalities via the pumps. Eels are an important cultural value to local iwi. To address this, Council has prepared a Fishery Management Plan, which has seen the installation of fish passage floodgates and spat ropes. Council is also proposing a long term plan to upgrade pumps to fish-friendly pumps. Council is actively engaged with local iwi and other stakeholders on a wider catchment basis.

Contribution to Community Outcomes

Community Outcome	How it contributes
Efficient and resilient core services <ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is easy and safe for everyone to travel around the District There are opportunities to walk and cycle The District is well prepared for growth, and can adapt to change Services are supplied in ways that benefit the environment. 	Flood protection provides resilience for agricultural land in Hikurangi.
Caring for the environment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Communities work to keep the environment clean and healthy Access to the coast for people is protected Open spaces in parks and streets are places where nature thrives The District is positively adapting to climate change. 	Investment in flood protection assists in the improvements in water quality within the Kaipara Harbour catchment.

■ High Contribution □ Medium Contribution

Levels of service

Highlight Mandatory Performance Measures

6.1 Council will provide a reliable and sustainable flood protection scheme, which is managed to mitigate flooding within the Hikurangi Swamp Scheme area to an acceptable level.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
6.1.1 The major flood protection and control works that are maintained, repaired and renewed to the key standards defined in the local authority's relevant planning documents (such as its activity management plan, asset management plan, annual works programme or long term plan).	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
6.1.2 The number of infringement or abatement notices issued by Northland Regional Council in relation to the scheme consent.	0	0	0	0	0

Changes to Levels of Service

No changes are proposed.

Funding Impact Statement

[illegible]

Capital Works

Flood Protection and Control Programme	Project	LTP Year 1 2018/19 \$000	LTP Year 2 2019/20 \$000	LTP Year 3 2020/21 \$000	LTP Year 4-6 2021/22- 2023/24 \$000	LTP Year 7-10 2024/25- 2027/28 \$000
Hikurangi Swamp	Gravity Drainage Gates	-	-	-	334	485
Hikurangi Swamp	Level Sensor Renewals	-	-	-	131	-
Hikurangi Swamp	Pump Upgrades/Renewals	-	-	-	-	2,483
Hikurangi Swamp	Stop/Control Bank Renewals	-	-	-	278	-
	Flood Protection and Control Total	-	-	-	743	2,968

7. Community Facilities and Services

Community facilities and services are a key contributor to an attractive, vibrant and thriving District. This activity includes our parks and recreation spaces, as well as our community buildings. It also includes our services that support our communities through community development and libraries. This incorporates venues and events, a key function to add activity to our public spaces. Customer services represents Council's first point of contact with our community.

This profile also includes Civil Defence. Civil Defence provides emergency management services and rural fire services for the District. A comprehensive emergency management organisation is in place that encompasses the management of the Rural Fire Service and is focused around the four phases of the emergency management continuum known as the four R's (reduction, readiness, response and recovery). The intention is to encourage greater self-reliance in the community by developing and maintaining Community Response Plans for prompt and effective recovery in the event of a disaster.

Parks & Recreation

Purpose and Strategic Fit

Council provides parks and reserves for sport and recreation, landscapes and green places. We administer 20,720 hectares of land as open space, with an asset value of \$46.9 million. This includes;

- sportsfields and playgrounds
- natural areas such as wetlands and mangrove estuaries, coastal areas and esplanade reserves
- city parks and street gardens
- cemeteries
- former quarries and landfills
- forest remnants, pine forests and regenerating bush
- areas reserved for water supply, waste treatment and other public utilities.

The overall objective is to create, operate, maintain, renew and dispose of assets to provide for existing and future customers in the most cost-effective manner.

The quality of these spaces and the activities that take place on them contribute to the attractiveness and vibrancy of our District. Our parks and associated facilities are significant assets which are used and appreciated by residents and visitors.

The Reserves Act 1977 requires land administered by Council to be managed in accordance with the Act.

Potential negative effects

The undersupply of public space could be detrimental to the wider community, particularly in urban areas. To address this Council will develop an open space strategy to help guide the provision of public space.

Contribution to Community Outcomes

Community Outcome	How it contributes
Efficient and resilient core services <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • It is easy and safe for everyone to travel around the District • There are opportunities to walk and cycle • The District is well prepared for growth, and can adapt to change • Services are supplied in ways that benefit the environment. 	<p>Although not a core service, the adequate provision of open space is needed to support the development of an attractive, vibrant and thriving community.</p> <p>Opportunities for walking and cycling are provided through public spaces.</p>
Caring for the environment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Communities work to keep the environment clean and healthy • Access to the coast for people is protected • Open spaces in parks and streets are places where nature thrives • The District is positively adapting to climate change. 	<p>Our parks team supports community initiatives to keep our District clean as well as managing weeds and pests.</p> <p>Access to the coast is protected through reserves managed by Parks.</p> <p>Design and landscaping in our public spaces and streets enables nature to thrive.</p>
Positive about the future <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The District has productive land and people, and a thriving City centre • There is a fair urban/rural balance • Council has clear and simple documents and rules • The District embraces new technology and opportunity. 	<p>Open space is distributed across the District, therefore contributing to a fair urban and rural balance.</p> <p>New technology is improving service delivery, including turf maintenance.</p>

Proud to be local <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The District is neat and tidy, and looks attractive. • Public areas feel and are safe • There is always something to do and see • There are opportunities for people of all abilities, ages and life stages to be active. 	<p>Maintenance of our parks and public spaces ensures the District looks neat and tidy</p> <p>Our public spaces and parks are the venue for many community events and activities.</p> <p>Our parks and sports grounds and walking tracks provide opportunities for people to be active and healthy.</p>

■ High Contribution □ Medium Contribution

Levels of service

7.1 Council will provide and maintain outdoor sporting facilities to support and promote active recreation of the community through participation in both organised and informal sporting activities.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Sports parks will be provided to meet the community's needs.*	177hrs	181 hrs	181 hrs	181 hrs	184 hrs

7.2 Council will provide and maintain a range of reserves, including built facilities, to meet the needs of the community as well as protecting and enhancing the natural environment.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Average satisfaction rating of sports' codes with sports' parks.	82%	84%	84%	85%	86%
Residents' satisfaction with neighbourhood, civic space, cultural heritage, public gardens, and recreational and ecological linkages to parks.	82%	83%	84%	85%	86%

7.3 Council will convert or upgrade identified existing open spaces to provide a wider range of high quality recreational and leisure opportunities within the District for our community and visitors.

Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Hectares of open space land transformed does not drop below**	0.5ha	0.5 ha	0.5 ha	0.5 ha	0.5 ha
Residents' perception that Council is making sufficient investment in developing a strong sense of place for the District and its communities.	70%	70%	70%	70%	70%

7.4 Council will provide and maintain cemeteries and a crematorium in a satisfactory manner.

Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Residents' satisfaction with cemeteries.	90%	90%	90%	90%	90%

* This measure is expressed as the number of hours available at sports parks per 1000 members of the District population during the winter season.

** This measure relates to parks and reserve lands that have been developed with amenities that promote increased public use.

Changes to Levels of Service

Minor changes to the Level of Service statements to improve clarity. Updated targets to reflect investment in Levels of Service.

Libraries

Purpose and Strategic Fit

Libraries provide the people in our community with opportunities for life-long learning, access to information, leisure and reading. This all contributes to a vibrant and thriving District.

Public libraries provide free and open access to knowledge and services. They are a neutral, respected gateways to information and a safe place that offers equal access for all community members.

The Local Government Act 2002 requires that, where such a service is provided, residents are able to join the library free of charge.

Potential negative effects

No potential negative effects have been identified for Libraries.

Contribution to Community Outcomes

Community Outcome	How it contributes
Positive about the future <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The District has productive land and people, and a thriving City centre There is a fair urban/rural balance Council has clear and simple documents and rules The District embraces new technology and opportunity. 	Our libraries embrace technology to improve the customer's access to information through initiatives such as providing internet access, e-books and self-service checkouts.
Proud to be local <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The District is neat and tidy, and looks attractive Public areas feel and are safe There is always something to do and see There are opportunities for people of all abilities, ages and life stages to be active. 	Our libraries are key community facilities providing equitable access to life-long learning as well as fulfilling leisure and recreational needs.

■ High Contribution □ Medium Contribution

Levels of service

7.5 Council will provide library services to the District via the Central Library, the mobile and branch libraries.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Percentage of population who have used a library in the past year.	60%	60%	60%	60%	60%

Residents' satisfaction with the resources (books, magazines etc.) the library service provides.	95%	95%	95%	95%	95%
--	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

Changes to Levels of Service

There are no proposed changes from the 2015-25 LTP.

Community Property

Purpose and Strategic Fit

Council is committed to providing appropriate pensioner housing and community buildings for our District to use. Our property service will help to build thriving and vibrant communities.



Where community halls are not Council-owned, operational grants may be provided to assist in the maintenance of these important community facilities.

Potential negative effects

No potential negative effects have been identified for Community Property.

Contribution to Community Outcomes

Community Outcome	How it contributes
Positive about the future <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The District has productive land and people, and a thriving City Centre There is a fair urban/rural balance Council has clear and simple documents and rules The District embraces new technology and opportunity. 	Our community facilities are located across the District to ensure there is a fair urban and rural balance.
Proud to be local <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The District is neat and tidy, and looks attractive. Public areas feel and are safe There is always something to do and see There are opportunities for people of all abilities, ages and life stages to be active. 	Our community facilities ensure activities and facilities are available across the District for people of all abilities, ages and lifestyles.

 High Contribution  Medium Contribution

Levels of Service

7.6 Council will provide rental accommodation that meets the specific needs of eligible elderly members of the community.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Percentage occupancy rate of pensioner housing.	98%	98%	98%	98%	98%
Pensioner housing residents' satisfaction with the standard of accommodation.	80%	80%	80%	82%	82%

Changes to Levels of Service

Minor changes to show improved performance measures.

Community Development

Purpose and Strategic Fit

Council is committed to a Community Development Framework that aims to work with our communities, to ensure they are vibrant and thriving as well as cohesive and sustainable. This is achieved through various initiatives including:

- community-led development programmes
- grants and community funding
- crime reduction and community safety programmes such as City Safe
- support for our Positive Ageing, Disability and Youth Advisory groups.

It seeks to help strengthen and enhance the District by ensuring that people feel safe, able to access and participate in activities and are supported in becoming more vibrant and resilient.

Potential negative effects

No potential negative effects have been identified for Community Services.

Contribution to Community Outcomes

Community Outcome	How it contributes
Positive about the future <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The District has productive land and people, and a thriving City centre • There is a fair urban/rural balance • Council has clear and simple documents and rules • The District embraces new technology and opportunity. 	Through the Community Development Framework, our communities will be involved across both rural and urban parts of the District.
Proud to be local <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The District is neat and tidy, and looks attractive. • Public areas feel and are safe • There is always something to do and see • There are opportunities for people of all abilities, ages and life stages to be active. 	Community development enhances and strengthens our communities to ensure people feel safe and can participate in a range of events and opportunities.

■ High Contribution □ Medium Contribution

Levels of service

7.7 Council will promote and support community safety.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Percentage of residents within the community who feel safe within the District.	85%	85%	85%	85%	85%

7.8 Council will support the District's social and cultural wellbeing through its involvement in activities and programmes which support and develop the community.

Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Percentage of grant applicants who understand and are satisfied with the grants' application process.	80%	80%	80%	80%	80%

7.9 Council is actively involved in youth, positive ageing, accessibility and other groups of interest issues.

Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Percentage of people active in these sectors who believe Council is achieving strong engagement.	80%	80%	80%	80%	80%

Changes to Levels of Service

There are no proposed changes from the 2015-25 LTP

Venues and Events

Purpose and Strategic Fit

We provide venues, while managing and producing events that contribute to the cultural and social fabric of our community. These venues and events form a prominent contribution to our District's attractiveness and vibrance. This helps to create opportunities for residents and visitors who contribute to the District's economy.

Potential negative effects

No potential negative effects have been identified for Venues and Events.

Contribution to Community Outcomes

Community Outcome	How it contributes
Positive about the future <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The District has productive land and people, and a thriving City centre There is a fair urban/rural balance Council has clear and simple documents and rules The District embraces new technology and opportunity. 	Venues and Events has a District focus, ensuring there is a fair balance between rural and urban areas.
Proud to be local <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The District is neat and tidy, and looks attractive. Public areas feel and are safe There is always something to do and see There are opportunities for people of all abilities, ages and life stages to be active. 	Venues and Events provides a wide variety of activities to ensure there always something to see and do for both residents and visitors.

■ High Contribution □ Medium Contribution

Levels of Service

Highlight Mandatory Performance Measures

7.10 Our venues will encourage increased use and high satisfaction levels of those using our facilities.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Number of attendees over all facilities will increase annually.	3%	3%	3%	3%	3%
Satisfaction with the quality of venues and events.	80%	80%	80%	80%	80%

Changes to Levels of Service

Minor changes are proposed to improve clarity.

Customer Services

Purpose and Strategic Fit

Customer services is our interface with our communities and with our visitors. This is where questions from the public are received and where transactions take place. Customer services is delivered through our contact centres, our various customer service centres across the District and our visitor information centres.

A satisfactory customer experience and access to the right information is essential for our District to thrive.

Potential negative effects

No potential negative effects have been identified for Customer Services.

Contribution to Community Outcomes

Community Outcome	How it contributes
Positive about the future <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The District has productive land and people, and a thriving City centre There is a fair urban/rural balance Council has clear and simple documents and rules The District embraces new technology and opportunity. 	Customer services assists the community to do business and understand our documents, rules and processes.
Proud to be local <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The District is neat and tidy, and looks attractive. Public areas feel and are safe There is always something to do and see There are opportunities for people of all abilities, ages and life stages to be active. 	Our customer services are a key point of contact with our community. This interface enables us to work with the community to ensure our District is safe, tidy and attractive.

■ High Contribution □ Medium Contribution

Levels of Service

Highlight Mandatory Performance Measures

The community has access to Council's activities through our Service Centres and Contact Centre, who provide a "first point of contact" service.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Percentage of increased levels of satisfaction with service received by "first point of contact" customer service.	New	1%	1%	1%	1%

Contact centre service calls answered in under 20 seconds.	New	85%	85%	85%	85%
Wait time for walk in customers.	New	No more than 6 mins	No more than 6 mins	No more than 6 mins	No more than 6 mins

Council will provide, through the Whangarei visitor centres, an accurate booking and information service which influences more visitors to stay longer and spend more money.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Visitors' satisfaction with the service provided by the information consultants at our information centres.	New	Very satisfied	Very satisfied	Very satisfied	Very satisfied

Changes to Levels of Service

This is a new addition to the community facilities and services profile. It recognises the importance of customer services in connecting with our communities and delivering an excellent standard of service.

Funding Impact Statement

Community Facilities & Services	Annual Plan 2017 - 18 \$000	Year 1 2018 - 19 \$000	Year 2 2019 - 20 \$000	Year 3 2020 - 21 \$000	Year 4 2021 - 22 \$000	Year 5 2022 - 23 \$000	Year 6 2023 - 24 \$000	Year 7 2024 - 25 \$000	Year 8 2025 - 26 \$000	Year 9 2026 - 27 \$000	Year 10 2027 - 28 \$000
Sources of Operating Funding											
General rates, uniform annual general charges, rates penalties	24,316	24,736	27,293	28,296	28,696	36,363	38,572	40,806	42,882	46,311	49,546
Targeted rates	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Subsidies and grants for operating purposes	59	61	62	63	65	66	68	69	71	73	75
Fees and charges	2,501	2,739	2,791	2,823	2,873	2,931	2,988	3,050	3,116	3,182	3,251
Internal charges and overheads recovered	1,686	455	475	484	503	516	528	538	548	559	571
Local authorities fuel tax, fines, infringement fees and other receipts	1,404	1,433	1,468	1,503	1,542	1,582	1,624	1,668	1,714	1,760	1,810
Total Operating Funding	29,965	29,425	32,090	33,169	33,679	41,459	43,780	46,131	48,332	51,885	55,253
Applications of Operating Funding											
Payments to staff and suppliers	20,619	23,334	24,510	24,850	25,923	26,125	28,463	27,855	28,131	29,125	29,513
Finance Costs	4,727	5,364	5,706	5,512	5,959	6,535	6,925	7,047	7,238	7,227	7,579
Internal charges and overheads applied	7,309	7,694	8,415	8,539	9,260	9,549	9,823	10,022	10,154	10,330	10,582
Other operating funding applications	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total Applications of Operating Funding	32,655	36,392	38,631	38,901	41,142	42,209	45,211	44,925	45,524	46,682	47,674
Surplus / (Deficit) of Operating Funding	(2,690)	(6,967)	(6,541)	(5,732)	(7,463)	(750)	(1,431)	1,206	2,808	5,203	7,580
Sources of Capital Funding											
Subsidies and grants for capital expenditure	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Development and financial contributions	397	608	628	649	670	657	672	688	705	723	742
Increase / (decrease) in debt	10,308	15,605	24,997	13,547	18,797	14,358	12,375	14,695	12,889	1,879	13,782
Gross proceeds from sale of assets	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other dedicated capital funding	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Lump sum contributions	-	50	-	772	789	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total Sources of Capital Funding	10,705	16,264	25,625	14,969	20,257	15,015	13,048	15,383	13,594	2,602	14,524
Applications of Capital Funding											
Capital expenditure											
to meet additional demand	-	1,482	610	42	360	1,041	807	731	1,486	634	8,218
to improve levels of service	4,259	2,897	8,919	2,120	4,135	6,434	3,585	4,886	9,233	3,034	10,768
to replace existing assets	5,456	4,097	4,696	5,659	6,213	6,159	5,563	7,115	5,000	3,750	3,462
Increase / (decrease) in reserves	(1,700)	821	4,858	1,416	2,085	630	1,662	3,858	683	387	(343)
Increase / (decrease) of investments	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total Applications of Capital Funding	8,015	9,297	19,084	9,237	12,794	14,265	11,616	16,589	16,402	7,805	22,104
Surplus / (Deficit) of Capital Funding	2,690	6,967	6,541	5,732	7,463	750	1,431	(1,206)	(2,808)	(5,203)	(7,580)
Funding Balance	(0)	-	-	(0)	(0)	0	(0)	0	0	-	0

Capital Works

Civil Defence Programme	Project	LTP Year 1 2018/19 \$000	LTP Year 2 2019/20 \$000	LTP Year 3 2020/21 \$000	LTP Year 4-6 2021/22- 2023/24 \$000	LTP Year 7-10 2024/25- 2027/28 \$000
Civil Defence and Emergency Management	Civil Defence Emergency Management Equipment Renewals	5	5	27	39	49
Civil Defence and Emergency Management	Civil Defence Emergency Management New Equipment	-	-	5	6	6
Civil Defence and Emergency Management	Tsunami Signage	26	36	16	72	73
Civil Defence and Emergency Management	Tsunami Sirens Renewals	17	18	18	57	82
	Civil Defence Total	48	59	66	174	210

Community Development Programme	Project	LTP Year 1 2018/19 \$000	LTP Year 2 2019/20 \$000	LTP Year 3 2020/21 \$000	LTP Year 4-6 2021/22- 2023/24 \$000	LTP Year 7-10 2024/25- 2027/28 \$000
CCTV Network	CCTV Upgrades and Improvements	133	136	138	434	630
Council-Owned Community Buildings	Community Buildings Renewals and Improvements	58	213	27	16	107
Pensioner Housing	Pensioner Housing Renewals and Improvements	589	688	667	1,780	1,998
Sense of Place	Community-Led Development	255	261	266	835	1,211
Sense of Place	Village Planning	154	157	161	505	732
	Community Development Total	1,189	1,454	1,259	3,571	4,678

Libraries Programme	Project	LTP Year 1 2018/19 \$000	LTP Year 2 2019/20 \$000	LTP Year 3 2020/21 \$000	LTP Year 4-6 2021/22- 2023/24 \$000	LTP Year 7-10 2024/25- 2027/28 \$000
Digital Council	Library IT Equipment	102	104	107	109	-
Library Asset Renewals	Library Renewals	5	5	5	496	24
Library Books	Book Purchases	660	674	689	2,162	3,135
	Libraries Total	767	784	801	2,767	3,159

Parks and Recreation Programme	Project	LTP Year 1 2018/19 \$000	LTP Year 2 2019/20 \$000	LTP Year 3 2020/21 \$000	LTP Year 4-6 2021/22- 2023/24 \$000	LTP Year 7-10 2024/25- 2027/28 \$000
Cemeteries	Cemeteries Level of Service	82	-	-	229	-
Cemeteries	Cemeteries Renewals	58	204	434	267	251
Cemeteries	Cemetery Land Purchases	-	-	-	82	1,794
Coastal Structures	Coastal Structures Level of Service	61	-	63	3,081	1,547
Coastal Structures	Coastal Structures Renewal	710	804	600	1,021	1,807
Neighbourhood and Public Gardens	Dog Park Upgrades	306	-	-	-	-
Neighbourhood and Public Gardens	Neighbourhood and Public Gardens Level of Service	153	-	-	-	-
Neighbourhood and Public Gardens	Neighbourhood and Public Gardens Renewals	552	801	818	3,235	4,691
Playgrounds and Skateparks	Playgrounds and Skateparks Level of Service	108	120	-	491	252
Playgrounds and Skateparks	Playgrounds and Skateparks Renewals	160	188	159	1,313	822

Sense of Place	Blue/Green Network	-	-	-	3,998	8,587
Sense of Place	Hatea Activity Loop	326	-	-	613	1,050
Sense of Place	Parks Interpretation Information	43	44	45	140	204
Sense of Place	Pohe Island Development	61	1,313	80	1,551	1,887
Sense of Place	Public Art	43	44	45	140	204
Sense of Place	Town Basin - Conversion of Carpark to Park	-	5,005	-	-	-
Sense of Place	Whangarei City Centre Plan Implementation	51	1,188	266	1,527	2,551
Sense of Place	Whangarei City Entrance Signage & Beautification	-	-	-	611	-
Sportsfields and Facilities	Sport and Recreation Growth	1,987	313	-	-	-
Sportsfields and Facilities	Sport and Recreation Level of Service	202	89	-	1,078	3,499
Sportsfields and Facilities	Sport and Recreation Renewals	788	1,233	579	2,539	5,752
Sportsfields and Facilities	Sportsfields Land Purchases	-	-	-	1,637	12,576
Sportsfields and Facilities	Tikipunga Soccer Hub	-	52	511	675	-
Walkways and Tracks	Walkway and Track Renewals	436	489	360	1,559	1,970
	Parks and Recreation Total	6,126	11,887	3,959	25,788	49,443

Venue and Events Programme	Project	LTP Year 1 2018/19 \$000	LTP Year 2 2019/20 \$000	LTP Year 3 2020/21 \$000	LTP Year 4-6 2021/22- 2023/24 \$000	LTP Year 7-10 2024/25- 2027/28 \$000
Flags and Decorations	Flags and Decorations	-	-	-	72	-

Forum North Venue	FN Venue - Catering Kitchen Upgrades	48	-	-	-	-
Forum North Venue	FN Venue - Conference Centre Upgrades	-	-	-	-	-
Forum North Venue	FN Venue - Data Upgrades	44	-	-	-	-
Forum North Venue	FN Venue - Furniture Upgrades	22	23	23	74	26
Forum North Venue	FN Venue - Health and Safety Upgrades	33	-	-	78	45
Forum North Venue	FN Venue - Theatre Technical Equipment Upgrades	88	90	92	287	100
Northland Events Centre	NECT - Exterior General Renewals	85	128	23	258	1,218
Northland Events Centre	NECT - Field Renewals	31	-	-	-	-
Northland Events Centre	NECT - Floor Covering Renewals	-	-	26	178	157
Northland Events Centre	NECT - Interior General Renewals	66	23	153	93	26
Northland Events Centre	NECT - Light Tower Renewals	100	-	1,545	1,579	-
	Venue and Events Total	516	263	1,862	2,619	1,572

8. Planning & Regulatory Services

We are required to undertake planning, monitoring and enforcement activities that meet the requirements of a wide range of legislation, such as the Resource Management Act. This includes:

- issuing resource and building consents and ensuring they meet required conditions
- providing health and liquor licences
- monitoring and enforcing bylaws such as animal and noise control, health, liquor and parking
- undertaking District Planning.

The functions within this activity are covered by four separate departments: District Plan, Resource Consents, Building Control and Regulatory Services.

The outcomes of these functions are important in ensuring our District remains attractive and that our communities thrive.

District Plan

Purpose and Strategic Fit

The population of Whangarei is growing, creating demand for the strategic management of the District's resources. The District Plan function delivers planning outcomes and environmental regulation through the Resource Management Act.

The District Plan manages how and where our District develops and therefore is essential to ensuring our District is attractive and vibrant through good design and protecting our valuable natural environment.

Potential negative effects

Lack of appropriate planning controls can lead to adverse environmental effects. This is mitigated through adherence to the Resource Management Act and an ongoing review of our District Plan.

Contribution to Community Outcomes

Community Outcome	How it contributes
Efficient and resilient core services <ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is easy and safe for everyone to travel around the District There are opportunities to walk and cycle The District is well prepared for growth, and can adapt to change Services are supplied in ways that benefit the environment. 	The District Plan aligns with core infrastructure provision to enable planned and integrated growth in appropriate locations.
Caring for the environment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Communities work to keep the environment clean and healthy Access to the coast for people is protected Open spaces in parks and streets are places where nature thrives The District is positively adapting to climate change. 	The District Plan is a key regulatory tool to manage the effects on our environment. Provisions in our District Plan ensure existing public access to coastal areas are maintained and new opportunities are provided, where appropriate.
Positive about the future <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The District has productive land and people, and a thriving City centre There is a fair urban/rural balance Council has clear and simple documents and rules The District embraces new technology and opportunity. 	The District Plan enables productive land uses and activities across the District.
Proud to be local <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The District is neat and tidy, and looks attractive. Public areas feel and are safe There is always something to do and see There are opportunities for people of all abilities, ages and life stages to be active. 	This District Plan can support urban design outcomes that promote activity, safety and attractive built forms and public spaces.

Levels of Service

9.1 Develop, implement and maintain a District Plan in accordance with the RMA whilst reflecting the desires of the community and issues of sustainability.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Plan changes are researched, proposed, consulted on and reported on, as required by Council in accordance with the relevant statutory requirements.	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%

Changes to Levels of Service

There are no proposed changes from the 2015-25 LTP

Resource Consents

Purpose and Strategic Fit

The Resource Management Act directs the processes and functions of this group, as well as guiding the overall outcome of the resource consent process which is to:

- promote the sustainable management of natural and physical resources in the District.
- ensure the District remains attractive, vibrant and thriving.



This is achieved by processing resource consents and associated applications.

Potential negative effects

Negative environmental effects can result from poor decision making on resource consent applications. This is mitigated by the approval of applications being delegated to senior staff members. Negative economic results can occur if consents are not processed in a timely manner, which delays the start of activities. External resources are used to ensure that statutory timeframes are met during times of high workloads that cannot be met by staff.

Contribution to Community Outcomes

Community Outcome	How it contributes
Caring for the environment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Communities work to keep the environment clean and healthy • Access to the coast for people is protected • Open spaces in parks and streets are places where nature thrives • The District is positively adapting to climate change. 	Resource consents enact the District Plan and RMA to ensure the long term maintenance and protection of significant stands of bush, outstanding landscapes and other natural features that contribute to a valued environment.
Positive about the future <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The District has productive land and people, and a thriving City centre • There is a fair urban/rural balance • Council has clear and simple documents and rules • The District embraces new technology and opportunity. 	The resource consent processes are clear and simple, guided by the District Plan and the Resource Management Act.
Proud to be local <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The District is neat and tidy, and looks attractive. • Public areas feel and are safe • There is always something to do and see • There are opportunities for people of all abilities, ages and life stages to be active. 	Ensuring compliance with District Plan rules and conditions of resource consents contributes to the appearance of the District and a community's enjoyment of places and spaces.

 High Contribution  Medium Contribution

Levels of Service

Highlight Mandatory Performance Measures

9.2 Council will process resource consent and associated applications within statutory timeframes.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Percentage of non-notified resource consent applications processed within statutory timeframes.	95%	95%	95%	95%	95%
Percentage of Section 223 and Section 224 applications for subdivision consents under the RMA within statutory timeframes.	95%	95%	95%	95%	95%

9.5 Council will ensure compliance with land-use consents by monitoring consents issued.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Percentage of land-use consent conditions monitored (Note: time frames will be dependent on priorities based on potential environmental risk associated with non-compliance).	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%

Changes to Levels of Service

Level of Service 9.5 is a new addition to this profile acknowledging changes in responsibility through a recent organisational review.

Building Control

Purpose and Strategic Fit

Our Building Control department ensures that buildings in our District are designed and constructed to the agreed standards and quality. The healthy design and construction of our homes is important to us and has a direct bearing on our residents' health and perspective on life.

We promote the safe and sanitary use of living and public facilities, as well as access for people with disabilities. We will take action against owners of buildings that pose a risk to the general safety and well-being of the public.

The Building Control department also has responsibilities to establish buildings that may be earthquake prone, to ensure building owners meet their responsibilities under the new legislation.

Potential negative effects

Negative effects from not administering the related statutes can range from dangerous and insanitary public use and residential buildings to non-compliant housing stock. Not issuing building consents and failing to meet the requirements of accreditation may result in a loss of confidence and accreditation to perform these functions as a Building Consent authority.

Contribution to Community Outcomes

Community Outcome	How it contributes
Caring for the environment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Communities work to keep the environment clean and healthy Access to the coast for people is protected Open spaces in parks and streets are places where nature thrives The District is positively adapting to climate change. 	The building control measures around construction methods ensures our environment is protected.
Positive about the future <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The District has productive land and people, and a thriving City centre There is a fair urban/rural balance Council has clear and simple documents and rules The District embraces new technology and opportunity. 	Building control processes are clear and simple and enable economic activity whilst appropriately protecting our communities from unsafe and poor quality building practices.
Proud to be local <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The District is neat and tidy, and looks attractive. Public areas feel and are safe There is always something to do and see There are opportunities for people of all abilities, ages and life stages to be active. 	Building compliance ensures that built structures are safe and durable.

■ High Contribution □ Medium Contribution

Levels of Service

Highlight Mandatory Performance Measures

9.3 Council will responsively and accurately manage the building consents and compliance process.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Percentage of building consents' applications processed within statutory timeframes.	96%	96%	96%	96%	98%
Percentage of inspections completed within two days.	95%	95%	95%	95%	95%

Changes to Levels of Service

There are no proposed changes from the 2015-25 LTP.

Health and Bylaws

Purpose and Strategic Fit

The Health and Bylaws department undertakes monitoring and enforcement functions across a wide cross-section of statutes focusing on the protection of community health, safety and amenity. We have two teams:

- Environmental Health is responsible for registering, monitoring, verifying, inspecting, enforcing and ensuring general compliance in the food, health and liquor licensing work areas.
- Armourguard Security is responsible for services relating to dog and stock control, parking enforcement, excessive noise control and general bylaw enforcement.

Potential negative effects

Failure to effectively enforce and monitor can lead to significant adverse environmental, health and nuisance across the District. This is mitigated through an appropriate enforcement and monitoring regime.

Contribution to Community Outcomes

Community Outcome	How it contributes
Caring for the environment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Communities work to keep the environment clean and healthy • Access to the coast for people is protected • Open spaces in parks and streets are places where nature thrives • The District is positively adapting to climate change. 	The enforcement of bylaws ensures our environment is protected.
Positive about the future <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The District has productive land and people, and a thriving City centre • There is a fair urban/rural balance • Council has clear and simple documents and rules • The District embraces new technology and opportunity. 	Regulatory processes are clear and simple and enable economic activity whilst appropriately protecting our communities from nuisance activities.
Proud to be local <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The District is neat and tidy, and looks attractive. • Public areas feel and are safe • There is always something to do and see • There are opportunities for people of all abilities, ages and life stages to be active. 	Ensuring compliance with our bylaws contributes to the appearance of the District and a community's enjoyment of places and spaces.

■ High Contribution □ Medium Contribution

Levels of Service

Highlight mandatory performance measures.

9.4 Council will ensure responses to complaints relating to parking, excessive noise, dogs, stock and bylaws are carried out within contracted timeframes.

Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Percentage of complaints responded to within contracted timeframes.	85%	85%	85%	85%	85%

9.6 Council will protect, promote and monitor public health, in general, and in the areas of food, businesses and liquor licensing premises, specifically.

Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Percentage of health and liquor licensed premises inspected annually.	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%

Changes to Levels of Service

There are no proposed changes from the 2015-25 LTP.

Capital Projects

Planning and Regulatory Programme	Project	LTP Year 1 2018/19 \$000	LTP Year 2 2019/20 \$000	LTP Year 3 2020/21 \$000	LTP Year 4-6 2021/22- 2023/24 \$000	LTP Year 7-10 2024/25- 2027/28 \$000
Dog Pound	Dog Pound Renewals	204	1,415	-	-	-
	Planning and Regulatory Total	204	1,415	-	-	-

9. Governance and Strategy

Purpose and Strategic Fit

This includes the democratic functions of our organisation which drive robust decision making through Council meetings, briefings and workshops. Governance functions also include hearings and consultation and engagement opportunities.

This group also sets the strategic direction. The focus is on how our District grows and develops through District-wide issue-based or place-based strategies.

Fostering meaningful and sustainable relationships with iwi, hapu and maatawaka organisations across the District is a crucial function of this group. These relationships also exist through specific programmes of work as well as larger scale projects such as treaty settlements.

Potential negative effects

Ineffective strategies or the absence of strategic direction could lead to adverse environmental effects. This is mitigated through a review of the Growth Strategy to ensure it is relevant and based on up-to-date information.

Contribution to community outcomes

Community Outcome	How it contributes
Efficient and resilient core services <ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is easy and safe for everyone to travel around the District There are opportunities to walk and cycle The District is well prepared for growth, and can adapt to change Services are supplied in ways that benefit the environment. 	Our strategic planning ensures that core infrastructure is provided to meet the demands of growth in a managed and co-ordinated way.
Caring for the environment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Communities work to keep the environment clean and healthy Access to the coast for people is protected Open spaces in parks and streets are places where nature thrives The District is positively adapting to climate change. 	Strategic planning ensures our environment is cared for.
Positive about the future <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The District has productive land and people, and a thriving City centre There is a fair urban/rural balance Council has clear and simple documents and rules The District embraces new technology and opportunity. 	Democracy functions ensure transparent and robust decision making. Strategic planning and implementation of key projects allows our City centre to thrive.

■ High Contribution □ Medium Contribution

Levels of Service

Our democratic functions are transparent and meet the legislative requirements.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Responses to requests for information made under the Local Government Official Information Act 1987 and the Privacy Act 1993 are provided within relevant statutory timeframes.	New	100%	100%	100%	100%
Percentage of Council, committee and hearings' agendas that meet relevant legislative timeframes	New	100%	100%	100%	100%

We deliver the requirements of the National Policy Statement on Urban Development Capacity.					
Performance Measure	2017-18 Target	2018-19 Target	2019-20 Target	2020-21 Target	2021-28 Target
Meet the statutory timeframes and deliverables as set out in the National Policy Statement on Urban Development Capacity.	New	100%	100%	100%	100%

Changes to Levels of Service

This is a new profile group that was not in the 2015-25 LTP. It has been included to highlight the importance of our strategic and democratic functions.

Funding Impact Statement

[illegible]

Capital Projects

Governance and Strategy Programme	Project	LTP Year 1 2018/19 \$000	LTP Year 2 2019/20 \$000	LTP Year 3 2020/21 \$000	LTP Year 4-6 2021/22- 2023/24 \$000	LTP Year 7-10 2024/25- 2027/28 \$000
Commercial Property	WAMT Air Conditioning Upgrade	61	-	-	-	-
New Airport Evaluation	New Airport Evaluation	510	1,042	1,332	1,361	-
	Governance and Strategy Total	571	1,042	1,332	1,361	-

Support Services

Support services are focussed on supporting the nine activity areas so that they are best positioned to deliver their various goods and services to the community.

The following provides a brief background to the various support activities.

Financial Services

Financial Services plays a key stewardship role. As well as facilitating the development of an effective financial strategy, Financial Services supports Council in managing its financial resources on a day-to-day basis, as well as in the long term.

The department provides services in respect to planning, monitoring and reporting of Council's financial and business resources and treasury function, and actively manages Council's debt and investment positions for both the short and long term.

Financial Services also administers transactional functions including rates, water billing, accounts receivable and receipting, including the efficient administration and maintenance of property records, by ensuring the Rating Information Database and other property information systems are kept up to date. Efficient billing processes are undertaken for land and water rates as well as sundry debt and receipting functions for all of Council. Direct debit processing and timely follow up of overdue amounts mean that arrears are kept to a minimum. Another service provided by the Financial Services team is general procurement advice and management. They also support some Council CCOs by providing shared financial services to them.

People and Capability

Council's People and Capability department works across the business by supporting and leading functions such as day-to-day transactions, including recruitment and payroll, to longer-term strategic matters like employee development and change management.

The Department's vision is twofold: to have the right people, motivated, engaged and delivering, and to enable Council to attract the right people into its business, it is important that Council is perceived as a good place to work.

Information Services

Information Services supports both the technical and informational function requirements of Council. From desktop systems to the management of data and documentation, Information Services ensures accurate and up-to-date information is readily available and can be easily stored and accessed, and that Council's technology and systems allow it to comply with its legislative requirements. Council's website plays a vital role as an interactive service for providing extensive resources of public information, documents and publications, consultations and GIS mapping (including District Plan and hazard overlays).

Information Services also ensures that the underlying structures for the storage and fast retrieval of all corporate data are stable and available 24/7, with the ability to recover vital systems in the event of a disaster or interruption to services. This includes the ongoing development and enhancement of existing software systems to enable Council to meet the growing consumer demands from our District for faster supply and faster access to information.

Commercial Property

The commercial component of Property is responsible for Council-owned properties held as investments and able to provide a commercial return to Council. This includes a mix of commercial freehold and perpetual ground lease sites. Investment portfolio properties will generally not be sold unless Council identifies compelling reasons for re-investment, such as investment in future infrastructure. Non-strategic properties may be sold, provided due process is followed.

Capital Projects, Planning and Development Engineering

Infrastructure Projects and Support provides technical and administrative support to the Infrastructure and Services group. This includes planning, contract and general administration, asset management systems and databases, and project and contract management.

Communications

How we communicate with the community is essential to raise awareness of what we do and why. It also key to promoting projects and events that occur across the District. Council's Communications' team uses a wide range of communication channels, which acknowledge the diversity of the people of our District.

Funding Impact Statement

Corporate & Finance	Annual Plan 2017 - 18 \$000	Year 1 2018 - 19 \$000	Year 2 2019 - 20 \$000	Year 3 2020 - 21 \$000	Year 4 2021 - 22 \$000	Year 5 2022 - 23 \$000	Year 6 2023 - 24 \$000	Year 7 2024 - 25 \$000	Year 8 2025 - 26 \$000	Year 9 2026 - 27 \$000	Year 10 2027 - 28 \$000
Sources of Operating Funding											
General rates, uniform annual general charges, rates penalties	4,015	6,479	3,821	5,354	6,986	136	(1,067)	(94)	(464)	(1,192)	(1,054)
Targeted rates	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Subsidies and grants for operating purposes	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Fees and charges	459	722	738	754	771	789	807	826	847	868	891
Internal charges and overheads recovered	21,683	21,164	23,181	23,519	25,563	26,366	27,133	27,691	28,046	28,531	29,241
Local authorities fuel tax, fines, infringement fees and other receipts	668	667	679	690	702	715	728	743	758	773	789
Total Operating Funding	26,825	29,032	28,418	30,318	34,022	28,007	27,601	29,166	29,187	28,980	29,867
Applications of Operating Funding											
Payments to staff and suppliers	18,780	19,842	19,925	19,065	20,337	20,658	20,993	21,933	21,854	22,340	23,065
Finance Costs	493	323	1,047	1,760	1,733	1,705	1,675	1,644	1,611	1,577	1,541
Internal charges and overheads applied	2,160	2,407	2,596	2,639	2,818	2,909	2,990	3,046	3,103	3,163	3,234
Other operating funding applications	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total Applications of Operating Funding	21,433	22,572	23,568	23,464	24,888	25,272	25,658	26,623	26,568	27,080	27,841
Surplus / (Deficit) of Operating Funding	5,392	6,460	4,851	6,854	9,134	2,735	1,943	2,543	2,619	1,900	2,026
Sources of Capital Funding											
Subsidies and grants for capital expenditure	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Development and financial contributions	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Increase / (decrease) in debt	10,284	14,572	14,357	(478)	(548)	(575)	(604)	(636)	(668)	(702)	(801)
Gross proceeds from sale of assets	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other dedicated capital funding	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Lump sum contributions	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total Sources of Capital Funding	10,284	14,572	14,357	(478)	(548)	(575)	(604)	(636)	(668)	(702)	(801)
Applications of Capital Funding											
Capital expenditure											
to meet additional demand	282	1,013	919	26	123	123	21	-	-	-	-
to improve levels of service	3,014	17,698	16,183	4,758	7,318	538	100	210	215	61	63
to replace existing assets	12,380	1,591	1,361	833	371	708	412	875	897	282	289
Increase / (decrease) in reserves	-	730	745	759	775	790	806	822	839	855	872
Increase / (decrease) of investments	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total Applications of Capital Funding	15,676	21,032	19,208	6,376	8,587	2,159	1,339	1,907	1,951	1,198	1,225
Surplus / (Deficit) of Capital Funding	(5,392)	(6,460)	(4,851)	(6,854)	(9,134)	(2,735)	(1,943)	(2,543)	(2,619)	(1,900)	(2,026)
Funding Balance	(0)	-	-	-	-	-	0	(0)	-	-	-

Capital Projects

Support Services Programme	Project	LTP Year 1 2018/19 \$000	LTP Year 2 2019/20 \$000	LTP Year 3 2020/21 \$000	LTP Year 4-6 2021/22- 2023/24 \$000	LTP Year 7-10 2024/25- 2027/28 \$000
Civic Buildings	Furniture Renewals	20	21	21	67	97
Council Premises	One Building	14,900	15,290	-	-	-
Council Vehicle Replacements	Council Vehicle Replacements	214	219	224	702	1,018
Digital Council	Asset Management Mobility	-	-	358	94	-
Digital Council	Asset Management Software Upgrade	808	822	-	-	-
Digital Council	CIA Upgrade	879	-	-	-	-
Digital Council	Corporate Performance Management	301	-	-	-	-
Digital Council	Council Knowledge Base	-	-	-	296	-
Digital Council	Council Performance Online	-	-	-	493	-
Digital Council	Customer Access - Online Services	-	416	-	-	-
Digital Council	Decision Support System Development	81	-	-	-	-
Digital Council	Digital District Plan and Policies Online	184	318	55	-	-
Digital Council	Digital Platform	858	-	-	-	-
Digital Council	Digitisation of Records	749	-	-	-	-
Digital Council	Electronic LIMs	-	605	33	83	-

Digital Council	Electronic Signatures	-	-	-	213	-
Digital Council	IT Equipment New	51	52	53	167	242
Digital Council	IT Equipment Replacement	-	625	639	-	1,536
Digital Council	LIDAR	128	-	-	-	-
Digital Council	Mobility Technology - Building	-	292	-	-	-
Digital Council	Platform as a Service	-	-	405	235	-
Digital Council	Telephony as a Service	-	-	-	1,023	435
Digital Council	Travel & Expense Claim Automation	-	-	-	120	-
Digital Council	Upgrade Kete SharePoint	-	261	-	-	-
Digital Council	Workflow Systems Development	68	-	-	-	-
New Theatre/Expo/Conference	New Theatre	-	-	3,883	6,642	-
Old Harbour Board Building	Old Harbour Board Building Development	1,538	-	-	-	-
	Support Services Total	20,778	18,921	5,672	10,134	3,327

Whangarei District Council Prospective Statement of Comprehensive Revenue											
	Annual Plan	LTP year 1	LTP year 2	LTP year 3	LTP year 4	LTP year 5	LTP year 6	LTP year 7	LTP year 8	LTP year 9	LTP year 10
	2017 - 18	2018 - 19	2019 - 20	2020 - 21	2021 - 22	2022 - 23	2023 - 24	2024 - 25	2025 - 26	2026 - 27	2027 - 28
	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000
Rates	92,376	96,925	100,995	105,324	109,867	114,728	119,832	125,298	131,153	137,314	143,904
Development and other contributions	3,028	4,640	4,794	4,952	5,114	5,012	5,127	5,250	5,381	5,516	5,659
Subsidies and grants	19,941	18,665	19,798	19,631	20,355	20,800	21,264	22,439	25,964	27,154	28,871
Fees and charges	14,654	13,420	14,071	14,766	15,513	16,327	17,144	18,034	19,007	20,044	21,188
Interest revenue	394	53	46	41	37	35	35	35	35	35	35
Other revenue	12,591	14,356	14,518	15,475	15,737	15,598	15,479	15,770	16,047	16,390	16,826
Total income	142,984	148,059	154,222	160,189	166,623	172,500	178,881	186,826	197,587	206,453	216,483
Expenditure											
Other expenditure	60,174	63,732	65,091	65,104	68,412	69,430	72,578	73,646	74,570	77,081	79,287
Depreciation and amortisation	41,329	39,199	40,195	41,367	43,078	45,168	46,327	47,194	49,091	50,109	51,113
Finance costs	8,059	7,899	8,369	9,391	9,601	10,067	10,377	10,432	10,815	11,216	11,581
Personnel costs	27,744	28,900	30,012	30,612	31,228	31,849	32,487	33,140	33,800	34,477	35,170
Total operating expenditure	137,306	139,730	143,667	146,474	152,319	156,514	161,769	164,412	168,276	172,883	177,151
Surplus / (deficit) before taxation	5,678	8,329	10,555	13,715	14,304	15,986	17,112	22,414	29,311	33,570	39,332
Taxation charge		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Surplus / (deficit) after taxation	5,678	8,329	10,555	13,715	14,304	15,986	17,112	22,414	29,311	33,570	39,332
Other comprehensive revenue and expenses											
Gain / (loss) on infrastructure asset revaluation		42,005	17,324	17,814	71,297	20,608	21,239	83,036	24,440	26,286	101,433
Gain / (loss) on other asset revaluations	-	1,978	-	-	-	-	1,632	-	-	-	-
Total comprehensive income	5,678	52,311	27,879	31,529	85,601	36,594	39,983	105,450	53,751	59,856	140,765
Balanced Budget Benchmark - Income less vested/ gain on sale & DC's divi		100.5%	101.9%	103.9%	104.0%	105.1%	105.5%	108.6%	112.4%	114.4%	117.2%
Over balanced budget / (Under balanced budget) \$000		688	2,762	5,764	6,190	7,973	8,984	14,164	20,930	25,054	30,675

Whangarei District Council Propsective Statement of Changes in Net Assets / Equity

	Annual Plan 2017 - 18	Year 1 2018 - 19	Year 2 2019 - 20	Year 3 2020 - 21	Year 4 2021 - 22	Year 5 2022 - 23	Year 6 2023 - 24	Year 7 2024 - 25	Year 8 2025 - 26	Year 9 2026 - 27	Year 10 2027 - 28
	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000
Opening balance as at 1 July	1,512,981	1,474,910	1,527,220	1,555,100	1,586,630	1,672,231	1,708,824	1,748,806	1,854,256	1,908,007	1,967,863
Total comprehensive revenue and expense	5,678	52,310	27,880	31,530	85,601	36,593	39,982	105,450	53,751	59,856	140,767
Adjustments and contributions to net assets/equity	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total recognised net assets/equity as at 30 June	1,518,659	1,527,220	1,555,100	1,586,630	1,672,231	1,708,824	1,748,806	1,854,256	1,908,007	1,967,863	2,108,630

Whangarei District Council Propsective Statement of Cashflows

	Annual Plan	LTP year 1	LTP year 2	LTP year 3	LTP year 4	LTP year 5	LTP year 6	LTP year 7	LTP year 8	LTP year 9	LTP year 10
	2017 - 18	2018 - 19	2019 - 20	2020 - 21	2021 - 22	2022 - 23	2023 - 24	2024 - 25	2025 - 26	2026 - 27	2027 - 28
	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000
Cash flows from operating activities											
Receipts from rate revenue	91,669	96,553	100,532	104,868	109,392	114,286	119,343	124,711	130,345	136,639	143,160
Subsidies and grants received	19,792	18,585	19,698	19,533	20,252	20,705	21,158	22,312	25,790	27,008	28,710
Other revenue including development contributions	14,569	14,622	14,923	16,040	16,460	16,225	16,213	16,612	16,985	17,484	18,052
Fees and charges received	12,506	13,369	14,008	14,704	15,448	16,267	17,077	17,954	18,897	19,952	21,087
Interest received	394	51	44	39	35	33	33	32	32	32	32
Dividends received	540	540	540	540	540	540	540	540	540	540	540
Payments to suppliers and employees	(88,181)	(91,994)	(91,308)	(97,972)	(99,031)	(100,194)	(106,031)	(104,372)	(106,727)	(111,814)	(112,514)
Interest paid	(8,009)	(7,899)	(8,369)	(9,391)	(9,601)	(10,067)	(10,377)	(10,432)	(10,815)	(11,216)	(11,581)
Net cash flow from operating activities	43,280	43,828	50,068	48,360	53,495	57,795	57,956	67,358	75,046	78,625	87,486
Cash flows from investing activities											
Proceeds from fixed assets	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Receipts from investments and loans	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Purchase and development of fixed assets	(61,994)	(69,448)	(90,183)	(65,473)	(68,408)	(66,917)	(58,730)	(71,677)	(80,206)	(76,105)	(85,288)
Purchase of investments and loans provided	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Net cash flow from investing activities	(61,994)	(69,448)	(90,183)	(65,473)	(68,408)	(66,917)	(58,730)	(71,677)	(80,206)	(76,105)	(85,288)
Cash flows from financing activities											
Proceeds from borrowings	18,314	25,621	40,114	17,113	14,913	9,123	775	4,319	5,160	(2,520)	(2,200)
Loan repayments received	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Repayment of borrowings	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Loans granted	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Net cash flow from investing activities	18,314	25,621	40,114	17,113	14,913	9,123	775	4,319	5,160	(2,520)	(2,200)
Net increase/(decrease) in cash, cash equivalents and bank overdrafts	(400)	1	(1)	(1)	-	1	1	(0)	0	0	(2)
Cash, cash equivalents and bank overdrafts at the beginning of the year	681	300	300	300	300	300	300	300	300	300	300
Cash, cash equivalents and bank overdrafts at the end of the year	281	300	300	300	300	300	300	300	300	300	300

Whangarei District Council Propsective Statement of Financial Position

	Annual Plan	LTP year 1	LTP year 2	LTP year 3	LTP year 4	LTP year 5	LTP year 6	LTP year 7	LTP year 8	LTP year 9	LTP year 10
	2017 - 18	2018 - 19	2019 - 20	2020 - 21	2021 - 22	2022 - 23	2023 - 24	2024 - 25	2025 - 26	2026 - 27	2027 - 28
	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000	\$000
Assets											
Current assets											
Cash and cash equivalents	281	300	300	300	300	300	300	300	300	300	300
Debtors and receivables	18,093	16,564	17,266	17,957	18,677	19,347	20,088	20,977	22,201	23,224	24,351
Derivative financial instruments		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Other financial assets	266	1,957	2,732	3,507	4,282	5,057	5,832	6,607	7,382	8,157	8,932
Other current assets	716	822	822	822	822	822	822	822	822	822	822
Assets held for sale	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total current assets	19,356	19,644	21,121	22,587	24,082	25,527	27,043	28,707	30,706	32,504	34,406
Non current assets											
Derivative financial assets	-	64	64	64	64	64	64	64	64	64	64
Other financial assets	13,573	13,543	13,543	13,543	13,543	13,543	13,543	13,543	13,543	13,543	13,543
Property plant and equipment	1,613,362	1,622,315	1,691,805	1,737,477	1,837,812	1,883,692	1,923,340	2,035,455	2,095,635	2,152,571	2,292,843
Intangible assets	6,632	9,583	10,405	9,654	8,946	8,423	7,048	5,452	3,828	2,173	510
Forestry assets	800	787	787	787	787	787	787	787	787	787	787
Investment properties	53,225	58,979	58,979	58,979	58,979	58,979	58,979	58,979	58,979	58,979	58,979
Total non current assets	1,687,592	1,705,272	1,775,584	1,820,504	1,920,131	1,965,488	2,003,762	2,114,280	2,172,835	2,228,117	2,366,726
Total assets	1,706,948	1,724,916	1,796,704	1,843,091	1,944,213	1,991,014	2,030,805	2,142,988	2,203,541	2,260,621	2,401,132
Liabilities											
Current liabilities											
Payables and deferred revenue	20,744	20,259	24,050	21,787	22,394	23,484	22,649	25,073	26,727	26,486	28,450
Derivative financial instruments	382	395	395	395	395	395	395	395	395	395	395
Current borrowings	29,000	30,000	30,000	30,000	30,000	30,000	30,000	30,000	30,000	30,000	30,000
Employee benefits liabilities	2,262	2,478	2,528	2,578	2,630	2,683	2,736	2,791	2,847	2,904	2,962
Provisions	358	108	106	108	114	234	112	110	113	117	115
Total current liabilities	52,746	53,240	57,078	54,869	55,533	56,796	55,892	58,369	60,082	59,902	61,922
Non current liabilities											
Derivative financial instruments	12,009	11,073	11,073	11,073	11,073	11,073	11,073	11,073	11,073	11,073	11,073
Non-current borrowings	121,477	131,459	171,573	188,686	203,598	212,721	213,496	217,815	222,974	220,454	218,255
Employee benefits liabilities	365	399	407	415	424	432	441	450	459	468	477
Provisions	1,103	1,368	1,318	1,262	1,199	1,012	941	869	791	705	619
Payables and deferred revenue	589	156	156	156	156	156	156	156	156	156	156
Total non current liabilities	135,543	144,455	184,527	201,592	216,449	225,395	226,107	230,362	235,453	232,857	230,580
Total liabilities	188,289	197,695	241,605	256,461	271,983	282,191	281,999	288,732	295,534	292,758	292,502
Net assets	1,518,659	1,527,220	1,555,100	1,586,630	1,672,231	1,708,824	1,748,806	1,854,256	1,908,007	1,967,863	2,108,630
Equity											
Retained earnings	855,622	887,165	907,958	921,062	938,052	954,232	972,245	1,002,162	1,031,933	1,064,278	1,102,355
Other reserves	67,412	72,290	62,053	62,665	59,979	59,784	58,882	51,379	50,919	52,144	53,401
Asset revaluation reserve	595,625	567,765	585,089	602,903	674,200	694,808	717,679	800,715	825,155	851,441	952,874
Total equity attributable to Council	1,518,659	1,527,220	1,555,100	1,586,630	1,672,231	1,708,824	1,748,806	1,854,256	1,908,007	1,967,863	2,108,630

Significant forecasting assumptions

	Financial risk	Impact for high financial risk assumptions	Level of uncertainty	Financial impact for assumption with high level of uncertainty
General assumptions				
<p>District growth: the number of residential ratepayers in Whangarei is expected to grow each year as more dwellings are built or properties divided – details of expected areas of growth are outlined in Council's Growth Strategy which can be viewed on Council's website.</p> <p>Development contributions: the value of development contributions collected is dependent on the number of subdivision lots developed and on the level of new service connections taking place. Development contributions (DC's) are forecast based on historical data with a growth factor applied. Council has assumed no effect from proposed changes to the current DC policy.</p>	High	The level of subdivision and development activity is difficult to forecast and carries a high level of uncertainty. Should Development Contributions revenue drop further in the future there may need to be a corresponding reduction in Council expenditure.	High	Every 1% of Development Contribution revenue not achieved will lead to a reduction in income of approximately \$46,000 in year 1, increased to approximately \$56,000 in year 10, reducing available funding for Council activity.
<p>Rate Increase: the following rates increases have been applied:</p> <p>Years 1 – 10: A 2% increase each year (excluding refuse rates), plus growth (in line with the WDC Growth Model 2017, plus (LGCI)).</p> <p>Previous years rates * (LGCI+2%+1%)</p> <p>These increases are considered to be necessary in order to ensure that rates income is sufficient for funding purposes.</p> <p>Water rates will only be increased by growth.</p>	Medium	Not applicable	Medium	Not applicable
<p>Inflation: The impact of Inflation has been factored into producing the prospective financial statements. This has been achieved by using price level adjusters sourced from BERL (see page 178) for each of the years of the LTP including the impact of inflation from the 2018-28 year to year one of the LTP. These adjusters will be updated for each year covered in the current LTP during subsequent annual plan and LTP processes using BERL data to mitigate this risk. The main financial risk for council is that operating and capital expenditure items rise faster than revenue items but the likelihood of this is considered to be low.</p>	Medium	Not applicable	High	If inflation is 1% more or less than the forecast Local Government Cost Index of 2% in year one of the LTP, total revenue would vary by approximately \$1.480 million, total income by approximately \$1.397 million, and the net surplus would move by approximately \$83k.
<p>User fees: increases are based on a percentage increase for District Growth, or in line with actual expected cost increase (as disclosed in the price level adjusters table following these assumptions) which is assumed to be sufficient for funding purposes. These will be reviewed annually to ensure compliance with Council's financial policies.</p>	Medium	Not applicable	Medium	Not applicable
<p>Forestry revaluation: Council has not budgeted for fair value movements in forestry due to the uncertainty of prediction. Any fair value movement will be non-cash and have an immaterial impact.</p>	Low	Not applicable	Medium	Not applicable

Significant forecasting assumptions

	Financial risk	Impact for high financial risk assumptions	Level of uncertainty	Financial impact for assumption with high level of uncertainty
Rental Income: Council has assumed rental increases will be based on the anticipated increases, timed to coincide with rental lease renewals.	Low	Not applicable	Low	Not applicable
Investment property revaluation: Council has not budgeted for fair value movements in investment properties due to the uncertainty of prediction. Any fair value movement will be non-cash and have an immaterial impact.	Low	Not applicable	Medium	Not applicable
<p>Climate change: Council's Activity Management Planning Policy and Practice Document contains the following Policy Statement on Climate Change: 'Whangarei District Council shall consider the effects of climate change on the activity in accordance with the latest Ministry for the Environment guidelines.'</p> <p>The impact on Council's infrastructure over the 10 years of the LTP is considered acceptable when compared with the currently-used design standards for new infrastructure, providing Ministry of Environment predictions are generally accurate.</p>	Low	Not applicable	Medium	Not applicable
Expenditure assumptions				
<p>Interest rates: the average cost of borrowing has been assumed to be 4.66% for existing and new debt. This is based on the weighted average cost of capital calculated across the period of the LTP. Council has a comprehensive interest rate hedging program which protects against interest rate rises through the life of the plan.</p> <p>The debt level is assumed to increase less than 10% throughout the plan.</p>	Medium	Interest rate risk exposure is managed through long term swaps and forward rate cover.	Medium	A 1% movement in interest, after factoring in the impact of hedging utilising long term swaps would affect the operating budgets by an average of \$162,200 pa.
Staff costs: staff costs are expected to increase by an average of 2% pa for the ten years, slightly higher than the (BERL) staffing price adjustor. Various additional roles have been included in the plan due to expected growth.	Medium	Not applicable	Medium	Not applicable
Depreciation funding: money to fund depreciation comes from rates. If the Capital expenditure to replace assets ('renewals') will be funded by rates collected to cover the cost of depreciation. Any surplus depreciation component will be used to repay borrowings. Any shortfall in funding requirements will be met through subsidies, operating surplus or increased debt. Further information can be found in the Revenue and Financing Policy, the Financial Strategy and the Infrastructure Strategy.	Medium	Not applicable	Medium	Not applicable

Significant forecasting assumptions

	Financial risk	Impact for high financial risk assumptions	Level of uncertainty	Financial impact for assumption with high level of uncertainty
Unfunded depreciation: Council does not fund depreciation on transportation assets to the extent that NZTA funds renewals, and this replacement capital expenditure is based on current NZTA funding rates.	Low	Not applicable	Low	Not applicable
CAPEX borrowings: the borrowings for capital expenditure are assumed to be repaid at the shorter of the life of the asset or 20 years for determining the funding for that asset.	Medium	Not applicable	Low	Not applicable
CAPEX: capital expenditure projects are assumed to be completed in the years in which they are budgeted for. Any carry forwards in a year are usually at a similar level to the previous year, resulting in a minimal net effect.	Medium	Not applicable	Medium	Not applicable.
Asset assumptions				
Subsidies: New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA) subsidies have been included based on Central Government contributions to certain Capital Expenditure – all subsidies will be 53% for this LTP. All subsidies are disclosed within the operating revenue and are contingent on the applicable capital projects taking place. Council has assumed that there are no changes to the subsidy rates for the term of the plan. The granting of subsidies for specific programmes are contingent on being approved by NZTA. Council will not know whether projects for which they have applied for funding from NZTA are approved until after the LTP is adopted.	High	If a planned significant capital project that has a capital subsidy associated with it is not approved by NZTA then this will cause a reduction in capital subsidy income and could possibly cause an existing balanced budget in a given year (from a DIA perspective) to become unbalanced.	High	If a planned significant capital project that has a capital subsidy associated with it is not approved by NZTA then this will cause a reduction in capital subsidy income and could possibly cause an existing balanced budget in a given year (from a DIA perspective) to become unbalanced.
Depreciation: depreciation rates for each asset group have been calculated using rates included in the Accounting Policies. Depreciation rates on infrastructural assets are based on the 2017 revaluation rate average for each activity. Depreciation expense is reduced by an average rate of renewals, assuming capex built to replace existing assets will only marginally increase depreciation.	Low	Not applicable	Medium	Not applicable
Infrastructural asset revaluation: An assumption has been made that revaluation of infrastructure assets will occur every three years, next due 1 st July 2019. (This is a change from historical revaluations occurring as at 30 June every third year.) For each revaluation year an inflationary rate (BERL) has been applied to the previous years' asset value to arrive at an estimated depreciated replacement cost. The depreciation expense has been calculated on the new revaluation balance. Differences in value have been attributed to individual asset revaluation reserves.	Medium	Not applicable	Medium	Not applicable
Roading Asset revaluation: The revaluation of the Roding Assets will occur yearly.	Low	Not applicable	Low	Not applicable
Pensioner Housing revaluation: The revaluation of Pensioner housing will remain at 5 year intervals.	Low	Not applicable	Low	Not applicable
Useful lives: useful lives for each asset group have been listed in the Accounting Policies.	Low	Not applicable	Low	Not applicable

Significant forecasting assumptions

	Financial risk	Impact for high financial risk assumptions	Level of uncertainty	Financial impact for assumption with high level of uncertainty
Vested Assets: Vested Asset income is inconsistent from year to year and as a consequence is difficult to forecast. It has therefore been reflected at a flat rate of \$2.5 million per year in the Plan. Vested asset income has no cash impact.	Low	Not applicable	Low	Not applicable
Funding sources: future replacement of significant assets is assumed to be funded in line with the Revenue and Financing Policy.	Low	Not applicable	Low	Not Applicable
Other Financial Assets: No movement in the value of Shares held in Civic Assurance Limited and the New Zealand Local Government Funding Agency has been assumed in the forecast nor any movement in the value of investments in subsidiaries.	Low	Not applicable	Low	Not Applicable
Investment Properties: No movement in the value of investment properties has been reflected in the Plan given the difficulty of forecasting future values and also taking into consideration that if values were forecast to change, it would not have an impact on cash requirements.	Low	Not applicable	Low	Not Applicable
Biological Assets and Derivative Financial Assets: No movement in the value of biological assets, intangible assets and derivative financial assets has been reflected in the Plan due to difficulty in forecasting future values. Any movements in these assets would have no cash impact to the Plan.	Low	Not applicable	Low	Not Applicable
Liability assumptions				
Interest: interest calculated on debt is based on historical average monthly movements and the impact of current and forecasted interest rate hedging.	Medium	Not applicable	Medium	Not applicable
Borrowings: it is assumed that Council will have the facilities to secure funding as required.	Low	Not applicable	Low	Not applicable
Derivative Financial Liabilities: No movement in the value of derivative financial liabilities has been reflected in the Plan due to difficulty in forecasting future values. Any movements in these assets would have no cash impact to the Plan.	Low	Not applicable	Low	Not applicable
Strategic				
Resource Consents: The necessary Resource Consents required for capital projects will be applied for in due course to align with the planned project timeframes. We assume conditions for Resource Consents will not alter budgeted project costs significantly.	Low	Not applicable	Low	Not applicable
Other Assumptions				
Strategic assets: Council has not planned for the ownership of any strategic assets to be transferred to another party. Council receives vested assets in satisfaction of various development contribution charges.	Low	Not applicable	Low	Not applicable
Forecasts: Business and Economic Research Limited (BERL) constructed the forecast increases in revenues (excluding rates) and costs for Local Authorities in September 2017 for use in their budgeting processes for Long Term Plans. It is assumed these factors are appropriate for Council forecasts.	Medium	Not applicable	Medium	Not applicable

Significant forecasting assumptions

	Financial risk	Impact for high financial risk assumptions	Level of uncertainty	Financial impact for assumption with high level of uncertainty
Currency Movement: Council does not have any significant exposure to currency movements and consequently has not specifically taken them into account.	Low	Not applicable	Low	Not applicable
Emissions trading scheme: The scheme has been implemented, however until Ministry for the Environment have considered the likely charges to stay and the price increase, Council will assume nil charges.	Medium	Not applicable	Medium	Not applicable
Local Government Reorganisation: Council has developed forecasts based on the assumption that the unitary council is not established and WDC will continue to operate.	Low	Not applicable	Low	Not applicable
Flood and Storm Damage: Council does not budget for storm events, as referred to in the 2018-2048 Infrastructure Strategy. Lack of funding provision for emergency works may result in reduced renewals as renewal funding gets diverted to fund flood damage repairs.	Medium	Not applicable	Medium	Not applicable
<u>Subsidiary assumptions</u>				
NRLLP: it is assumed that council will receive annual dividends from Northland Regional Landfill Limited Partnership throughout the term of the plan.	Low	Not applicable	Low	Not applicable
Northern Transportation Alliance (NTA): A shared services agreement between four Northland councils (Kaipara District Council, Far North District Council, Northern Regional Council, Whangarei District Council) and New Zealand Transport Authority (NZTA) was established on 1 July 2016. The activities of the NTA attract subsidy on subsidised projects. Council has made provision for gaining subsidy on the NTA activities for these subsidised projects.	Low	Not applicable	Low	Not applicable

7.2 Long-Term Plan 2018-2028 Key Dates and Consultation Activities

Meeting: Whangarei District Council
Date of meeting: 14 December 2017
Reporting officer: Merryn Statham (Consultation Advisor)

1 Purpose

To approve the key dates and consultation activities for the Long-Term Plan (LTP) 2018 - 28.

2 Recommendation

That Council approves the key dates and consultation activities for the Long-term Plan 2018 -28 as set out in this report.

3 Background

Early this year, Council approved an engagement plan for the LTP. This report uses that plan as a basis and presents the key dates for 2018, as well as the consultation activities for the formal consultation phase of the LTP.

As part of the LTP engagement plan, Council conducted an early engagement phase to hear from our community. Early engagement ran from 6 June to 7 August 2017. Thirteen public meetings, a Hui, a stall at the Matariki festival and two Have Your Say Events (HYSE) were held. Council accepted feedback through our dedicated website www.heretowhere.co.nz and in hard copy. We received 566 hardcopy and website submissions and 518 pieces of feedback via the HYSE and public meetings. Feedback from the early engagement has been fed into decision-making on this LTP.

A Council briefing was held on 21 November to discuss proposed key dates and consultation activities. This report incorporates the feedback received and presents revised dates and activities for approval.

4 Discussion

Key Dates

The key dates for the remainder of the LTP process are available overleaf at Table One. A Council meeting is scheduled to specifically adopt the Consultation Document and supporting information on 28 February 2018. Audit NZ are working with staff in January and from 7 to 23 February to audit the information and provide their opinion. The normal Council meeting, scheduled for 23 February does not allow sufficient time for the audit opinion to be issued and included in the Consultation Document.

After the 21 November Council briefing, Audit NZ provided their Audit Engagement letter to council, which included the audit dates in June for the proposed LTP. The dates presented to the council briefing have had to be amended to fit with the Audit NZ programme. The result is that the work programme is incredibly tight. Staff will ensure that processes and outputs are as efficient as possible.

On this Council agenda, there is also a report providing an overview of the LTP including some supporting documents. These have been publicly provided as early as possible to enable advance discussion about the LTP with the community. The formal consultation period will be from 7 March to 8 April as a result.

Table One: 2018 Dates for the 2018-2028 LTP

Date	Activity
28 February 2018	Adoption of Consultation Document and Supporting Documents. Note: Council meeting specifically for the LTP.
7 March – 8 April 2018	Formal consultation period. Note: Easter falls on 30 March, 1 April and 2 April.
20, 23, 24 April 2018	Verbal feedback – Hearings and Have Your Say Events Note: Have Your Say Events can also operate during the formal consultation phase.
2 May	Briefing/workshop to discuss key issues raised from consultation Note: More than one day will be scheduled if required.
16 May	Public Deliberations Note: More than one day will be scheduled if required
23 May	Briefing/workshop to review Draft LTP post deliberations
31 May	Adoption of proposed LTP for Audit NZ review
28 June	Council adopts LTP and supporting information
July	Summary publicly provided

Proposed Consultation Activities

The formal consultation activities are now being planned, so that communities in the district;

- are informed about the issues and key projects;
- are aware of, and encouraged to participate in, the formal consultation process and have appropriate opportunities to be involved;
- are able to participate in the formal consultation process; and
- feel that their views are considered.

Activities will cater to a broad audience, including those who regularly submit feedback, those who don't wish to present to formal hearings, and hopefully those who have not provided feedback to an LTP before.

There are three categories; awareness activities, collecting feedback and opportunities to provide verbal feedback. At the 21 November Council briefing, discussion included a focus on awareness raising activities, public meetings and utilising public events to broaden engagement. The desire to present to key organisations in Whangarei was also welcomed.

Staff will organise the same public meetings that were used for the early engagement phase of the LTP. Two of these were not well attended so have not been included, however, ideas were provided by elected members for additional public meetings since the 21 November briefing. Staff will continue to identify which further public meetings can be accommodated in to the schedule.

Communication tools will include newspaper, radio, social media, and our dedicated Here to Where website. Targeted emails and Facebook will also be used to encourage feedback.

Traditional hearings and Have Your Say Events (HYSE) will provide different options for submitters to provide their views verbally.

Staff presented to Te Kārearea 15 November, seeking feedback on engaging with Māori during the formal consultation phase. Their feedback reflected using similar approaches as were used in the early engagement.

The activities are summarised below in Table Two.

Table Two: Proposed consultation activities

Type of consultation	Where	Notes
Awareness Activities		
<p>Present at community groups (e.g. Resident and Ratepayers Associations)</p> <p>These community groups are those that contributed to the early engagement process.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Tutukaka Coast R&R Association (Mon 12 March) ▪ Ruakaka Parish R&R Association (Tue 13 March) ▪ Waipu R&R Association (Wed 28 March) ▪ Mangakahia Sports Ground Society ▪ Onerahi Community Association (Mon 19 March) ▪ Smeatons Drive Community Hall (Tue 13 March) ▪ Tikipunga Community Trust (Mon 12 March) ▪ Hikurangi Friendship House Charitable Trust (Tue 27 March) ▪ Parua Bay R&R Association (Tue 13 March) ▪ Kamo Community Inc (Mon 12 March) ▪ Pataua Area R&R Association (Sunday 1 April) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Will attend scheduled meetings where possible ▪ Regular meeting dates in brackets ▪ Otangarei, Pakotai Te Oru Oru Recreation Centre, Maungakarama Recreation Society, Portland R&R, Raumanga School, Whangarei Heads Citizens Assn and Ruatangata will all be further investigated for presentations.
Radio advertising		
Attending events	<p>For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Whangarei Markets 	
Social media	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Targeted Facebook ▪ Neighbourly ▪ Twitter 	
Website	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Council website ▪ Here to Where website 	

Targeted communications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Email Facebook 	
Presentations to large employers/groups	For example; <ul style="list-style-type: none"> DHB North Tec Refining NZ Business after 5, BNI 	
Collecting feedback		
Submission forms	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hard copy Online 	
Opportunities to provide verbal feedback		
Have Your Say Event (HYSE)	1-2 in the CBD	
Traditional hearings	Council chamber	20, 23, 24 April

5 Significance and engagement

The decisions or matters of this Agenda do not trigger the significance criteria outlined in Council's Significance and Engagement Policy, and the public will be informed via agenda publication on the website.

7.3 Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017

Meeting: Whangarei District Council
Date of meeting: 14 December 2017
Reporting officer: Shireen Munday – Strategic Planner

1 Purpose

To make the Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017 and associated decisions on the register of resolutions.

2 Recommendation/s

That Council

1. determines that -
 - i. in accordance with section 155(1) of the Local Government Act 2002, a bylaw is the most appropriate way of addressing the perceived problems
 - ii. the proposed bylaw is the most appropriate form of bylaw
 - iii. there are no New Zealand Bill of Rights implications
2. amends clause 32.1 of the Bylaw to read:

‘Any resolution, approval, permit or other act of authority made under any Parking and Traffic Bylaw of the Whangarei District Council, which is current at the time this Bylaw comes into force, remains in force on its terms until amended, replaced or revoked by Council.’
3. makes the Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017 contained in Attachment 1 in accordance with section 146 of the Local Government Act 2002, with effect from 15 December 2017
4. confirms the delegations proposed in Section 3 of the ‘Additional Information to Animals Bylaw’ (Attachment 1), which provide for officers to exercise powers under the Bylaw
5. authorises the Chief Executive, in consultation with HWM, to make any minor edits or amendments to the Bylaw to correct any identified errors or typographical edits, and/or to reflect decisions made by Council at this meeting.
6. declares, in accordance with clause 9 of the Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017, the locations defined in Attachment 4, heading 1, as shared paths and the associated listed categories and priority use, and rescinds all previous resolutions relating to cycle paths made under clause 30 of the Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2005
7. declares, in accordance with clause 10 of the Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017, the locations defined in Attachment 4, heading 2, as cycle lanes (special vehicle lanes), for the use of cycles only, and rescinds all previous resolutions relating to cycle lanes made under clause 30 of the Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2005
8. declares, in accordance with clause 17 of the Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017, the locations defined in Attachment 4, heading 3, as parking places to be reserved for motorcycles only and rescinds all previous resolutions relating to motorcycle parking made under clause 3 of the Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2005.
9. declares, in accordance with clause 11 of the Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017, the locations defined in Attachment 4, heading 4 as shared zones.

3 Discussion

3.1 Overview

The Planning and Development Committee has undertaken a review of Council's Parking and Traffic Bylaw. As part of that process, the Committee made the appropriate determinations under section 155 of the Local Government Act 2002, consulted with the public, and held deliberations to decide on the final form and content of a new Parking and Traffic Bylaw (the Bylaw).

At the deliberations meeting on 22 November 2017, the Planning and Development Committee approved all recommendations for final changes to the Bylaw. The final version of the Bylaw as approved by the Planning and Development Committee is provided in Attachment 1.

The Planning and Development Committee then resolved to recommend to Council to make the final Parking and Traffic Bylaw, incorporating the resolutions made at the deliberations meeting. The agenda report and associated minutes of that meeting are provided in Attachment 2.

3.2 Mobility parking

The mobility parking provisions in the proposed (2017) Bylaw differ from those in the current (2005) Bylaw and have been the subject of much discussion. There are no clauses in the current (2005) bylaw that provide that parking in a mobility parking space is exempt from having to pay for that parking space. It would appear that at some time in the past, Council's parking wardens made an informal decision not to ticket for non-payment in mobility parking spaces.

In December 2016, Council confirmed this existing practice of not enforcing charges in mobility parking spaces.

If Council wishes to retain and confirm this status quo, then Council could resolve to remove clause 16.3 from the proposed (2017) Bylaw. Then Council can rescind all previous resolutions relating to mobility parking spaces and make a new resolution in accordance with clause 16.1 of the proposed (2017) Bylaw. That resolution will state that all mobility parking spaces in the District, as at the date of the resolution, are free of charge at all times but subject to any existing time limits in place. A map showing all mobility parking spaces is provided for completeness.

3.3 Savings clause

Clause 32 of the Bylaw is a 'savings' clause. This clause provides the legal framework that decisions of Council, made by resolution under any previous Bylaws on the same matter, remain valid until, and if, Council chooses to change or rescind any such decisions. Staff have sought further advice from Council's Legal Counsel on the wording of this clause.

Staff recommend some minor changes to the wording to ensure the intent and scope of the clause is as clear as possible. The table below shows the proposed wording as presented to the Planning and Development Committee, the proposed changes in track changes and then the final proposed wording for completeness.

Proposed wording as approved by the Committee	Any resolution, approval, permit or other act of authority made under the Whangarei District Council Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2005 which is current at the time of revocation of that bylaw remains in force on its terms until amended, replaced or revoked by Council.
Proposed changes showing in track changes	Any resolution, approval, permit or other act of authority made under any Parking and Traffic Bylaw of the Whangarei District Council, Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2005 which is current at the time of revocation of that bylaw this Bylaw comes into force , remains in force on its terms until amended, replaced or revoked by Council.
Final proposed wording	Any resolution, approval, permit or other act of authority made under any Parking and Traffic Bylaw of the Whangarei District Council, which is current at the time this Bylaw comes into force, remains in force on its terms until amended, replaced or revoked by Council.

3.4 Section 155 Local Government Act 2002 considerations

When making a bylaw, Council is required to satisfy itself that:

- a bylaw is the most appropriate way of addressing the perceived problems
- the proposed bylaw is the most appropriate form of bylaw
- there are no New Zealand Bill of Rights implications.

As part of adopting a Statement of Proposal for consultation, the Planning and Development Committee made determinations on these matters on 14 September 2017. Attachment 3 is the section 155 analysis provided to the Committee at that meeting to support its decision-making process. For completeness, it is recommended that Council reviews and confirms these determinations, taking into consideration the changes made to the Bylaw following the consultation process, and any decisions made at this meeting.

3.5 Revocation of the Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2005

The process undertaken by the Planning and Development Committee identified that the existing Parking and Traffic Bylaw will be automatically revoked on December 14, in accordance with section 160A of the Local Government Act 2002. No further decisions are required of Council on this matter.

4 Register of resolutions

As described in section 3.2 above, clause 32 of the Bylaw ensures that all resolutions made under previous Parking and Traffic bylaws remain valid. For most matters addressed in the Bylaw, the existing resolutions are directly carried over to 'sit' within the new Bylaw and there are no technical changes required. However the legislative framework, including terminology and associated definitions, has changed since 2005. The new Bylaw reflects these changes and associated updates and inclusions to the resolutions for technical correctness are required.

Under the previous Bylaw, Council had made resolutions for 'cycle paths' which are now technically 'shared paths'. The bylaw did not specifically provide for the designation of cycle lanes (which are different from shared paths) but it is understood these were incorporated into resolutions under the cycleways clause. The bylaw also did not provide for the making of shared zones. The new Bylaw also provides specifically for the designation of motorcycle parking.

Attachment 4 provides a register of proposed resolutions as follows:

1. Shared paths
2. Cycle lanes
3. Motorcycle parking
4. Shared zones

In the case of shared paths and cycle lanes, these are 're-stating' previous resolutions made to reflect the new legislative framework. The three motorcycle parking areas contained in the motorcycle parking register have been in place for some time, but are now being separately identified in the register, to reflect the new structure of the Bylaw and to support appropriate enforcement actions as and when required. The inclusion of the 'Laneway' as a shared zone formalises the shared nature of this area between pedestrians and vehicles and reflects more recent legislative changes.

The full register of resolutions and associated reviews and updates will continue to be managed and reported back to Council by the Roading Department, but these matters have been incorporated into this report item for completeness.

5 Implementation

Council staff will be working with the enforcement contractor to update any standard operating procedures, develop new processes and procedures as well as any application forms as required. No other implementation activities are required to support the new Bylaw. Enforcement staff will continue to undertake monitoring activities and respond to, and manage complaints as they are made.

6 Significance and Engagement

6.1 Significance

The decisions and matters of this agenda do not trigger the significance criteria of Council's Significance and Engagement Policy.

6.2 Engagement

Council has consulted with the community on the issues of this agenda in accordance with the statutory requirements of the Local Government Act 2002.

Council will publicly notify the new Bylaw in accordance with the requirements of section 22 AE of the Land Transport Act 1998. The public will also be informed via agenda publication on Council's website.

7 Attachments

Attachment 1 – final Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017
 Attachment 2 - Agenda report for 22 November 2017 deliberations meeting
 Attachment 3 – s155 analysis
 Attachment 4 – register of resolutions
 Attachment 5 – Mobility parking spaces

Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017

Table of contents

1	Title	2
2	Commencement	2
3	Application	2
4	Purpose	2
5	Interpretation	2
6	Resolutions made under this Bylaw	4
7	One-way roads	4
8	Left or right turns and U-turns.....	4
9	Shared paths	4
10	Special vehicle lanes.....	5
11	Shared zones.....	5
12	Unformed legal roads	5
13	Livestock movement.....	5
14	Stopping, standing and parking.....	6
15	Parking places	6
16	Mobility parking	6
17	Motorcycle parking	8
18	Clearways, passenger service vehicles and transport stations	8
19	Loading zone	8
20	Heavy motor vehicle parking	8
21	General restrictions.....	9
22	Community concession parking permits.....	9
23	Parking permits	10
24	Parking vehicles off a roadway	10
25	Machinery or equipment on roads	10
26	Repairs on vehicles.....	10
27	Broken down vehicles.....	10
28	Removal of vehicles and things	11
29	Removal of construction	11
30	Bylaw breaches.....	11
31	Exceptions	11
32	Savings.....	12
	Additional information to Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017	13

1 Title

This Bylaw is the Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017.

2 Commencement

15 December 2017.

3 Application

This bylaw applies throughout the District of the Whangarei District Council except to roads which are not under the control of the Council.

Explanatory note: This Bylaw does not apply to roads under the control of the New Zealand Transport Agency.

Part 1 – Preliminary Provisions

4 Purpose

The purpose of this Bylaw is to set the requirements for parking and control of vehicular or other traffic on roads, parking places and transport stations owned or controlled by Whangarei District Council.

5 Interpretation

5.1 Any word used in this Bylaw that is defined in section 2 of the Act, has, for the purposes of this Bylaw, the same meaning as in section 2, unless otherwise provided for in this clause.

5.2 Any word used in this Bylaw that is defined in rule 1.6 of the Rules, has, for the purposes of this Bylaw, the same meaning as in rule 1.6, unless otherwise provided for in this clause.

5.3 In this Bylaw, unless the context otherwise requires -

Act means the Land Transport Act 1998 and any regulations or rules made under that Act

Approved disabled person's parking permit means a disabled person's parking permit or mobility parking permit:

- (a) issued by CCS Disability Action Incorporated or Sommerville Centre for Special Needs Wanganui Incorporated, or
- (b) approved by Whangarei District Council

Class of vehicle means a category of vehicles defined by reference to any common feature and includes:

- (a) vehicles by type, description, weight, size or dimension
- (b) vehicles carrying specified classes of load by the mass, size or nature of such loads
- (c) vehicles carrying no fewer than a specified number of occupants
- (d) vehicles used for specified purposes
- (e) vehicles driven by specified classes of persons
- (f) carpool and shared vehicles
- (g) vehicles displaying a specified permit authorised by Whangarei District Council.

Clearway means a length of roadway over which a no-stopping parking restriction applies for the purpose of increasing the number of through traffic lanes or providing increased space to allow for the free movement of traffic during the period for which the clearway restriction applies.

Council means the Whangarei District Council

Emergency vehicle means a vehicle used for attendance at emergencies and operated:

- (a) by an enforcement officer
- (b) by an ambulance service
- (c) as a fire service vehicle
- (d) as a civil defence emergency vehicle
- (e) as a defence force emergency vehicle.

Livestock means any horse, cattle, sheep, pig, goat, mule, ass, llama or deer and includes any other animal farmed for profit

Mobility parking permit means a current approved disabled person's parking permit

Mobility parking space means a space reserved by Council for vehicles lawfully displaying a mobility parking permit

Motorcycle includes a moped

Paid parking space means a parking space for which Council has determined a charge for parking is to be paid

Parking machine means a parking meter or other device that is used to facilitate the payment of charges for parking a vehicle in a paid parking space

Parking place has the same meaning as in section 591(6) of the Local Government Act 1974

Explanatory note: The main part of this definition is 'a place (including a building) where vehicles, or any class of vehicles, may wait'. A parking place, which may be on a road, also includes the means of egress and ingress from the parking place and any facilities associated with it.

Parking space means a parking place or part of a parking place identified by sign, marking or notice for the use of a single vehicle or a specified number of motorcycles

Rules means the Land Transport (Road User) Rules 2004

Shared path means an area of road, separated from a roadway, that may be used by some or all of the following:

- (a) pedestrians
- (b) cyclists
- (c) riders of mobility devices
- (d) riders of wheeled recreational devices

at the same time, and includes a cycle path

Transport station has the same meaning as in section 591(6) of the Local Government Act 1974.

Explanatory note: The main part of this definition is 'a place where transport-service vehicles, or any class of transport-service vehicles may wait between trips'. It also includes the means of egress and ingress from the transport station and any facilities associated with it.

5.4 Any explanatory notes and attachments are for information purposes only and do not form part of this Bylaw.

5.5 The Interpretation Act 1999 applies to this Bylaw.

6 Resolutions made under this Bylaw

- 6.1 The power to make a resolution under this Bylaw includes the power:
- (1) to regulate, control or prohibit the matter or thing generally, or for any specified classes of case, or in a particular case;
 - (2) to apply the regulation to all vehicles or traffic or to any specified class of vehicles or traffic;
 - (3) to apply the regulation to any specified road or roads or part of a road or roads under the control of Council;
 - (4) to apply the regulation at any specified time or period of time.
- 6.2 A power for the Council to make a resolution includes the power to amend or revoke the resolution or to revoke it and replace it with another or to reinstate an earlier resolution. In the event of any conflict between resolutions the most recent resolution shall prevail.

Part 2 – Vehicles and Road Use

7 One-way roads

- 7.1 Council may by resolution specify roads where vehicles must travel in one specified direction only.
- 7.2 A driver of a vehicle on a one-way road must travel only in the direction specified under clause 7.1.
- 7.3 Despite clause 7.1, Council may by resolution specify that cycles may travel in the opposite direction to other vehicles on a one-way road.

8 Left or right turns and U-turns

- 8.1 Council may by resolution prohibit or restrict:
- (1) vehicles on any road from turning to the right or to the left or from proceeding in any other direction;
 - (2) vehicles on any road turning from facing or travelling in one direction to facing or travelling in the opposite direction (performing a U-turn).
- 8.2 A person must not drive a vehicle contrary to any turning prohibition or restriction made under clause 8.1.

9 Shared paths

- 9.1 Council may by resolution:
- (1) fix the length, route and location of a shared path;
 - (2) specify that a shared path may be used by persons in some or all of the following categories, and specify the priority between such users:
 - (a) pedestrians
 - (b) cyclists
 - (c) riders of mobility devices
 - (d) riders of wheeled recreational devices.
- 9.2 A person must not use a shared path in a manner contrary to any restriction made under clause 9.1.

10 Special vehicle lanes

- 10.1 Council may by resolution specify a road, or a part of a road, as a special vehicle lane, use of which is restricted to a specified class or classes of vehicle.
- 10.2 A person must not use a special vehicle lane contrary to any restriction made under clause 10.1.

11 Shared zones

- 11.1 Council may by resolution specify any road to be a shared zone, intended to be used by pedestrians and vehicles.
- 11.2 Except where Council has by resolution specified otherwise, no person may stand or park a vehicle in a road specified as a shared zone.
- 11.3 A person must not use a shared zone in a manner contrary to any restriction made under clause 11.2.

12 Unformed legal roads

- 12.1 Council may by resolution restrict the use of motor vehicles on unformed legal roads for the purposes of protecting the environment, the road and adjoining land, and the safety of road users.
- 12.2 A person must not use a motor vehicle on a road contrary to a restriction made under clause 12.1.

13 Livestock movement

- 13.1 No person shall drive livestock along or across any road, unless the livestock is confined within a motor vehicle:
 - (1) during the hours of darkness; or
 - (2) at any time when there is insufficient visibility to clearly see a person, a vehicle or livestock that is 170 metres away; or
 - (3) on any road with an average daily traffic count of 2500 vehicles a day or more; or
 - (4) in the case of dairy cattle, where the cattle can be moved using a cattle race on private land or a cattle underpass.
- 13.2 In any case where livestock may be driven along a road:
 - (1) the number of livestock in any one mob shall not exceed 600 head, or 3,000 head in the case of sheep
 - (2) each mob shall be accompanied by one drover per 300 head of cattle or per 1500 head of sheep
 - (3) each mob shall be accompanied by pilot vehicles in front of and behind the mob. Such vehicles shall maintain a distance of no less than 200 metres from the mob.
- 13.3 Dairy cattle may be moved regularly across a road, where, as well as complying with clause 13.1, the following facilities have been installed and are in use at all crossing points:
 - (1) entranceways, including additional adjacent shoulders, that are constructed to Council's requirements for Vehicle Entrance Crossings
 - (2) warning signs that meet the requirements of the New Zealand Transport Agency Traffic Control Devices Manual
 - (3) an amber flashing light operating for the period the dairy cattle are on the road
 - (4) at least one person in charge of the herd being present for the period the dairy cattle are on the road.

- 13.4 Council may recover the costs incurred in repairing any damage to a road or private property, or cleaning up any animal excreta on the road, caused by the movement of livestock from the person in charge of the livestock.

Explanatory note: The purpose of controlling the movement of livestock on roads is to support the safety of, and minimise inconvenience to, road users, to protect Council roads and any utilities within the roads, and to prevent roads being used as stock races.

Part 3: Parking

14 Stopping, standing and parking

- 14.1 Council may by resolution:
- (1) prohibit or restrict the stopping, standing or parking of vehicles on any road
 - (2) limit the stopping, standing or parking of vehicles on any road to vehicles of any specified class or description.
- 14.2 A person must not stop, stand or park a vehicle on any road in contravention of a prohibition, restriction or limitation made under clause 14.1.

15 Parking places

- 15.1 Council may by resolution:
- (1) reserve any area of land or any road or any part of a road or any building or any part of a building owned or under the care, management or control of Council to be a parking place
 - (2) specify the vehicles or classes of vehicle that may or must not use a parking place
 - (3) prescribe the times, manner and conditions for the parking of vehicles or classes of vehicles in a parking place
 - (4) prescribe:
 - (a) any charges to be paid for the use of a parking place
 - (b) how parking charges may be paid; including by the use of parking machines or any other specified manner
 - (c) the manner of displaying proof of payment if necessary
 - (d) opening and closing times for off-street parking places.
- 15.2 Restrictions that apply generally to a parking place are subject to any specific stopping, standing or parking restrictions which apply to particular parking spaces within that parking place.
- 15.3 A person must not park a vehicle in a parking place in contravention of a prohibition or restriction made under clause 15.1.
- 15.4 To avoid doubt, clause 15.1(1) does not limit Council's power to provide parking places under section 591 of the Local Government Act 1974.

Explanatory note: This clause allows Council to designate parking spaces or prohibit parking for specific types of vehicles, including, but not limited to, electric vehicles and heavy vehicles.

16 Mobility parking

- 16.1 Council may by resolution specify any parking space as a mobility parking space, and may prescribe any time limits and parking charges for vehicles parking in the mobility parking space.
- 16.2 A person must not park a vehicle in a mobility parking space unless:
- (1) the vehicle is lawfully displaying a mobility parking permit; and

- (2) the vehicle is being used to convey a disabled person or to pick up or drop off a disabled person.

16.3 Where a vehicle is lawfully parked in a mobility parking space for which payment is required:

- (1) payment is required for up to the first hour of parking, or the applicable part payment for a period shorter than an hour
- (2) a payment for the first hour allows that vehicle to remain in the parking space for up to the maximum time indicated.

Explanatory note: Mobility parking spaces generally have a maximum time limit of P180/P240 to ensure turnover of access for other users. Clause 16.3 provides that payment is required for up to the first hour of parking only. If a user wishes to use the parking space for less than an hour, then full payment for the elected parking period is required. Example: If a vehicle parks in a mobility parking space where \$1 per hour payment is required and the user wishes to park for 30 minutes, then a payment of 50 cents is required. If the user pays \$1 then the vehicle may remain in the parking space up to the maximum time limit.

16.4 Where a vehicle lawfully displaying a mobility parking permit is parked in a time limited parking space for which payment is required:

- (1) payment is required for up to the first hour of parking, or the applicable part payment for a period shorter than an hour.
- (2) a payment for the first hour allows that vehicle to remain in the parking space for up to the maximum time indicated.

Explanatory note: Most time limited paid parking spaces have at least a two-hour (120 minute) parking limit. Clause 16.4 provides the same concession as for mobility parking spaces, but ensures turnover of parking spaces by applying the same maximum parking period for all users.

16.5 A vehicle lawfully displaying a mobility parking permit may park in any time unlimited paid parking space for double the length of time paid for.

Explanatory note: Clause 16.5 provides that in an unlimited paid parking space, payment is required for the first half of the parking period. Example: If a mobility parking permitted vehicle is parked in an unlimited paid parking space which attracts a charge of \$1 per hour and the user intends to use the space for 4 hours, then a payment of \$2 is required.

16.6 A vehicle lawfully displaying a mobility parking permit may park in any time limited parking space for double the length of the indicated time limit for that parking space, but only where the time limit for that space is 120 minutes or less.

Explanatory note: To support the turnover of available parking spaces, Clause 16.6 limits this concession for parking spaces with a time limit of 120 minutes or less. This means that for parking spaces with a 180 or 240 minute maximum time limit there is no concession and the indicated time limit applies for all vehicles. Example: A mobility parking permitted vehicle may park in a 60 minute parking space for 120 minutes, but may only park for 180 minutes in a 180 minute parking space.

17 Motorcycle parking

- 17.1 Council may by resolution determine any parking place to be reserved for the sole use of motorcycles and prescribe the maximum number of motorcycles that can park in the parking place.
- 17.2 No person may park a vehicle that is not a motorcycle in a parking place reserved for motorcycles.
- 17.3 No person may park a motorcycle in a parking space reserved for motorcycles other than at right angles to the road way.
- 17.4 Where more than one motorcycle occupies a standard paid parking space, only one parking fee shall be required for that space.
- 17.5 No motorcycle may remain parked in the parking space if the payment for that space has expired.

Explanatory note: If two motorcycles share a standard paid parking space, then a valid payment for one of the motorcycles must be in place for the entire duration of the parking time for both motorcycles. Motorcycles must park in accordance with the general restrictions of clause 21 of this Bylaw.

18 Clearways, passenger service vehicles and transport stations

- 18.1 Council may by resolution:
 - (1) determine any road, part of a road or any parking space to be a clearway, a stand or stop for specified classes of passenger service vehicle, or a transport station
 - (2) specify the vehicles or classes of vehicles that may or must not use a clearway, a stand or stop for specified classes of passenger service vehicle, or transport station
 - (3) prescribe the times, manner and conditions for the parking of vehicles in a clearway, a stand or stop for specified classes of passenger service vehicle, or transport station.
- 18.2 A person must not park a vehicle in a clearway, a stand or stop for specified classes of passenger service vehicle, or transport station in contravention of a prohibition or restriction made under clause 18.1.

19 Loading zone

- 19.1 Council may by resolution;
 - (1) determine any road or part of a road or any parking space to be a loading zone
 - (2) specify the class(es) of vehicle that may use the loading zone
 - (3) prescribe the maximum length of time any vehicle or class of vehicle may park in a loading zone.
- 19.2 A person must not use a loading zone in contravention of a prohibition or restriction made under clause 19.1

20 Heavy motor vehicle parking

- 20.1 Council may by resolution determine any road or part of a road, or any parking space, to be an area where the parking of heavy motor vehicles or any specified class of heavy motor vehicles is prohibited or restricted.
- 20.2 No person may park any heavy motor vehicle in contravention of a prohibition or restriction made under clause 20.1.

Explanatory note: Heavy motor vehicles are vehicles with a gross vehicle mass of more than 3500 kg. Restrictions may apply during specified hours or for specified periods of time that are different from general parking restrictions in that area.

21 General restrictions

- 21.1 No person may park a vehicle in a parking space:
- (1) so that any part of the vehicle extends beyond the marked space or is not entirely within the space; or
 - (2) that is already occupied by another vehicle unless the vehicles are motorcycles.
- 21.2 Notwithstanding clause 21.1, if, because of its size, it is necessary for a vehicle to occupy more than one adjoining parking space, it may do so. If the parking spaces are paid parking spaces, then the fee for each occupied space must be paid.
- 21.3 No person shall park any vehicle in a parking space:
- (1) beyond the expiry of the time paid for in a paid parking space
 - (2) beyond the maximum period for parking in that parking space.
- 21.4 No person may park in any paid parking space without paying the required parking fee by correctly activating any parking meter controlling the space or making payment in compliance with any instructions on any signs or machines located at the parking place.
- 21.5 A person parking in a paid parking space using a pay and display receipt must display that receipt in or on the vehicle in a place so that it can be easily read by a parking warden.
- 21.6 No person may park in a parking space where parking is temporarily discontinued by Council using signs or cones.

22 Community concession parking permits

- 22.1 Council may issue concession parking permits to persons in community groups or sectors, or volunteer organisations, that allow permit holders to park in parking places free of charge and/or without being restricted to any maximum time limits.
- 22.2 The groups in respect of which such concession parking permits may be issued include, but are not limited to:
- (1) Drivers over 70 years of age
 - (2) Disabled person working parking permits
 - (3) Volunteer community organisations
- 22.3 Council may impose conditions on the use of the permit, including by specifying parking areas or parking spaces where the permit applies.
- 22.4 Council may by resolution -
- (1) charge a fee for receiving and processing an application and issuing a permit
 - (2) prescribe any charges to be paid for the use of a permit
 - (3) determine situations when permit fees may be remitted, refunded or waived.
- 22.5 A community concession parking permit may be cancelled by Council at any time.

Explanatory note: All permits and associated application processes, forms and conditions under clause 22 of this Bylaw are managed under Council's Grants, Concessions and Loans Policy.

23 Parking permits

- 23.1 Council may issue parking permits that allow permit holders to park in parking places without requiring the charges for the parking space to be paid and/or without being restricted to any maximum time limits.
- 23.2 Council may impose conditions on the use of the permit, including by specifying parking areas or parking spaces where the permit applies.
- 23.3 Council may by resolution:
 - (1) charge a fee for receiving and processing an application and issuing a permit
 - (2) prescribe any charges to be paid for the use of a permit
 - (3) determine situations when permit fees may be remitted, refunded or waived.
- 23.4 A permit under this clause may be cancelled by Council at any time.

24 Parking vehicles off a roadway

- 24.1 A person must not stop, stand or park a motor vehicle in an area for which the speed limit is 50km/h or less on any part of a road or land owned or controlled by the Council which is laid out as a lawn or cultivated area, including a grass plot, a flower bed or shrubbery.
- 24.2 Clause 25.1 does not apply if the part of the road is designed and constructed to accommodate a parked vehicle.

25 Machinery or equipment on roads

- 25.1 A person must not leave any waste-taker bins, cranes, freight containers or large machinery on any road unless that person has the written permission of Council, or by or under the authority of any Act. This clause does not apply to containers that are used solely for kerbside collection of waste or diverted material authorised by Council and placed off the roadway, if such containers are not left on any road for a period exceeding 24 hours.

26 Repairs on vehicles

- 26.1 A person must not carry out repairs or modifications to a vehicle on a road unless those repairs or modifications are of a minor nature and do not impede the flow of traffic or are necessary to enable the vehicle to be moved.

27 Broken down vehicles

- 27.1 A person must not leave a vehicle on any road for a continuous period exceeding seven days if that vehicle does not have effective motive power or is in such a state that it cannot be safely driven.

Part 4: Enforcement Powers

28 Removal of vehicles and things

- 28.1 In addition to the powers conferred on it by any other enactment, Council may remove or cause to be removed from any parking place, transport station or road any vehicle or thing that is parked or present in breach of the Bylaw.
- 28.2 Council may recover from the person who committed the breach of this Bylaw the reasonable costs in connection with the removal of the vehicle or thing.

29 Removal of construction

- 29.1 Council may remove or alter a work or thing that has been constructed in breach of this Bylaw and may recover any costs of removal or alteration from the person who committed the breach.

Part 5: Offences and Penalties

30 Bylaw breaches

- 30.1 A person who fails to comply with any control, restriction, limitation or prohibition in, or made pursuant to this Bylaw, commits an offence under the Act and is liable to the penalties set out in the Act.

Part 6: Exceptions

31 Exceptions

- 31.1 A person is not in breach of this Bylaw if that person proves that:
- (1) the act or omission complained of took place in response to a situation on a road; and
 - (2) the situation was not of the person's own making; and
 - (3) the act or omission was taken:
 - (a) to avoid the death or injury of a person, or
 - (b) if the act or omission did not create a risk of death or injury or greater damage to any property, to avoid damage to any property.
- 31.2 Clause 32.1 does not apply if a court is considering, in proceedings for an offence specified in the Act, whether or not a person had complied with this Bylaw.
- 31.3 Any restrictions made under Parts 2 and 3 of this Bylaw do not apply to -
- (1) a vehicle that is engaged in urgent repair work to a public utility service
 - (2) a vehicle that is being used as an emergency vehicle in transit to or attendance at an emergency

- (3) a branded Whangarei District Council vehicle used by any officer or contractor engaged in work for the Council
- (4) a vehicle that is being used by a contractor engaged in work for Council and which displays evidence of this on the vehicle.

31.4 A person is not in breach of this Bylaw if that person proves that the act or omission -

- (1) took place in compliance with the directions of an enforcement officer or a parking warden; or
- (2) in the case of an act or omission done by an enforcement officer or a parking warden, was necessary in the execution of the person's duty.

Part 7: Savings

32 Savings

- 32.1 Any resolution, approval, permit or other act of authority made under any Parking and Traffic Bylaw of the Whangarei District Council, which is current at the time this Bylaw comes into force, remains in force on its terms until amended, replaced or revoked by Council.

Additional information to Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017

This document is for information purpose only and does not form part of this Bylaw. It contains matters made pursuant to this Bylaw and information to help users to understand, use and maintain this Bylaw. The document may be updated at any time.

Section 1: History of Bylaw

Action	Description	Date of decision	Commencement
Revoke	Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2005	NA	15 December 2017
Make	Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017	14 December 2017	15 December 2017

Section 2: Related documents

Document	Description	Location	Date
<i>Reports to Council/Committee/Panels</i>			
2017 Bylaw review and consultation programme	Approval of the 2017 bylaws review programme	Council meetings webpage - link	18/5/2017
2017 Bylaw review pre-consultation programme	Approval of the pre-consultation programme	Council meetings webpage – link	15/6/2017
Adoption of Statement of Proposal for proposed Animals Bylaw	Statement of Proposal including draft Bylaw adoption for public consultation	Council meetings webpage - link	29/6/2017
Hearing – proposed Animals Bylaw consultation	Hearing for interested parties to share their views in person	Council meetings webpage - link	1/11/2017
Deliberations – proposed Animals Bylaw	Deliberations on submission issues raised	Council meetings webpage - link	22/11/2017
Making of Bylaw	Council makes final Bylaw	Council meetings webpage - link	14/12/2017

Document	Description	Location	Date
<i>Legislation</i>			
Land Transport Act 1998	Provides the functions, duties powers and penalties to make and enforce this Bylaw.	www.legislation.govt.nz	NA
Bylaws Act 1910	Provides for certain matters related to the validity of bylaws.	www.legislation.govt.nz	NA
Interpretations Act 1999	Provides for certain matters related to the interpretation of bylaws.	www.legislation.govt.nz	NA

Section 3: Delegations

Clause	Function,Duty,Power to be delegated	Delegated Authority	Delegation date	Delegation active date
All	All of its responsibilities, duties and powers under this bylaw, except - (a) the power to set fees (b) the power to make a decision for which a Council resolution is required (c) the power to hear and decided on any appeal process	Chief Executive	14 December 2017	15 December 2017

Section 4: Enforcement powers

Legislative provision	Description
Sections 128E and 139 of the Land Transport Act 1998	Allows parking wardens to enforce any stationary vehicle offence or special vehicle land offence, may direct the driver to remove any vehicle if it is obstructing the road or if it is desirable to remove the vehicle in the interests of road safety or for the convenience or interests of the public etc. Allows parking wardens to issue an infringement notice or proceed with a prosecution under the Criminal Procedures Act 2011. Allows parking warden to move vehicles causing obstruction.

Section 5: Offences and penalties

Provision	Description of offence	Maximum fine upon conviction	Infringement fee
Land Transport (Offences and Penalties) Regulations 1999	As prescribed in Schedule 1 and Schedule 1B of the regulations	varies	varies
Section 22AB of the Land Transport Act 1998	Failure to comply with clauses of the Bylaw that do not constitute a stationary vehicle offence	\$500	nil

3.1 Deliberations – proposed Animals Bylaw

Meeting: Planning and Development Committee
Date of meeting: 22 November 2017
Reporting officer: Shireen Munday – Strategic Planner

1 Purpose

To deliberate on matters raised in submissions and further matters raised by staff to make a recommendation to Council on the final form and content of the proposed Animals Bylaw.

2 Recommendations

1. That the Planning and Development Committee approves the recommendations as contained in this report and the associated attachments as follows:
 - A. Obligations of animal owners in general**

That clause 6.1(d), as highlighted yellow in Attachment 1, is deleted from the final Animals Bylaw.
 - B. Cats – microchipping and de-sexing**

That the Planning and Development Committee notes the submissions and that no associated changes to the proposed Bylaw are made.
 - C. Bees**

That clause 9 and the associated definition of ‘hives’ in clause 5 as highlighted yellow in Attachment 1 are amended as per the provided track changes.
 - D. General matters**

That all changes showing in track changes in Attachment 1 are made to the final Animals Bylaw.
2. That the Planning and Development Committee recommends to Council that it makes the final Animals Bylaw, incorporating all resolutions made at this meeting.

3 Background

At its meeting on 14 September 2017 the Planning and Development Committee adopted a Statement of Proposal to revoke and replace Council’s Keeping of Animals, Poultry and Bees Bylaw. This proposal was a result of the statutory review of the Bylaw completed in accordance with s159 of the Local Government Act 2002.

The Committee held a ‘Have Your Say’ event, which was attended by one submitter, and on 1 November heard five submitters who wished to speak to their submission in Chambers.

The activities to give effect to the Special Consultative Procedure requirements as described in the report tabled at the 14 September 2017 meeting have been completed.

The Committee can now deliberate on the submissions received to determine whether any further changes to the proposed Animals Bylaw (the Bylaw) are required and to make a recommendation to Council on the final form and content of the Bylaw.

4 Discussion

There are two distinct matters to be addressed through the deliberations process. The first is the consideration of issues raised by submitters through the consultation process. The second aspect is to consider any officer advice, which is also provided for as part of the process in section 83(3) of the Local Government Act 2002.

In some cases, proposed changes are made due to both submission feedback, as well as officer advice. Where this is the case, this is indicated.

The report is supported through an attachment showing the track changes to the Bylaw that represents the staff recommendations. Attachments 2 and 3 are the version of the Bylaw as consulted on (Attachment 2) and the version of the Bylaw including all proposed changes with the track changes removed for ease of reading (Attachment 3).

4.1 Matters raised in submissions

Matters raised in submissions were restricted to clauses 5, 6 and 9 of the Bylaw, plus two cat related matters that were not included in the proposed Bylaw.

No community feedback was received on any of the other topics of the proposed Bylaw. Therefore, there is no scope to make any changes to these areas, outside of consideration of any further officer advice as provided in section 4.2 of this report. No further deliberations are required on these matters.

A. Obligations of animal owners in general

A submitter raised concerns in relation to clause 6.1(d) of the Bylaw. The submitter's concern was specifically about cats.

Clause 6.1 requires the owner or person in charge of an animal to take measures to avoid potential nuisance and property damage issues as well as risks to public health and safety. The draft clause also included a provision to stop animals roaming off their property.

The staff review of the proposed Bylaw concurred that there may be implications for cats, but that there are also potential other unintended consequences of sub clause 6.1(d).

The requirements of the other sub clauses of 6.1 provide sufficient obligations on an owner, including if their animal causes a nuisance by straying onto another property.

Staff recommendation:

That clause 6.1(d), as highlighted yellow in Attachment 1, is deleted from the final Animals Bylaw.

B. Cats – microchipping and de-sexing

The New Zealand Animal Companion Council has requested that compulsory micro-chipping and de-sexing of cats be included in the proposed Bylaw.

The committee discussed whether to include clauses relating to cats in the proposed Bylaw during the draft development stages of the Bylaw. At that time, it was determined to not include any specific cat related clauses in the Bylaw. This decision was made in light of current LGNZ remits and potential changes to national legislation on cats. Further concerns regarding the cost to residents and ratepayers of such regulations were raised, as well as the cost and difficulties in enforcing such provisions.

Staff recommendation:

That the Planning and Development Committee notes the submission and that no associated changes to the proposed Bylaw are made.

C. Bees

Of the 16 submissions received on the proposed Bylaw, 14 focussed solely on clause 9 - 'Bees'. Submissions ranged from opposition to bees to requests for more permissive and pragmatic rules to support the keeping of bees in the urban environments. Many submitters expressed concern regarding the proposed conditions for bee keeping in the urban environment, stating they were illogical, impractical and would not achieve the desired outcome. Equally, concern was raised that the proposed Bylaw would not give Council enough power to undertake strong enforcement action in those instances where it would be appropriate.

With assistance from the Whangarei Beekeeping Club, the entire clause has been redrafted as well as the definition of a 'hive'. Some of the original draft clause re-iterated national legislative requirements; this does not provide any tools to enforcement officers dealing with complaints. The revised clause provides enforcement officers with more clearly defined powers where bees are of concern to neighbouring residents, including the ability to have hives removed, but also has simplified and expanded the conditions within which bees can be kept in our urban environments.

A large explanatory note has also been included. While this does not form part of the Bylaw, it ensures Council is contributing to the education of beekeepers and supports bees being kept in a manner that reduced potential conflict with neighbours.

Staff recommendation:

That clause 9 and the associated definition of 'hives' in clause 5 as highlighted yellow in Attachment 1 are amended as per the provided track changes.

4.2 Proposed staff amendments

Since the consultation document was adopted, further advice has been sought (legal, by-law administrators and enforcement officers, customer services) and this has been used to recommend further changes to the Bylaw.

D. General matters

The Bylaw was reviewed for technical strength, consistency of terminology and use of 'plain English'. This resulted in several proposed changes, deletion of duplications and additions that do not change the overall content or context of the bylaw, but remove potential ambiguity and/or provide more clarity, including for enforcement purposes. These changes are shown as track changes in Attachment 1.

Staff recommendation:

That all changes showing in track changes in Attachment 1 are made to the final Animals Bylaw.

5 Significance and engagement

5.1 Significance

The decisions and matters of this agenda do not trigger the significance criteria of Council's Significance and Engagement Policy.

5.2 Engagement

Council has consulted with the community on the issues of this agenda in accordance with the statutory requirements of the Local Government Act 2002. The public will be informed via agenda publication on Council's website.

6 Attachments

Attachment 1 – proposed Animals Bylaw showing markup and highlighted changes.

Attachment 2 – proposed Animals Bylaw for consultation.

Attachment 3 – proposed final Animals Bylaw.

Planning and Development Committee Meeting Minutes

Date: Wednesday, 22 November, 2017
Time: 9:00 a.m.
Location: Council Chamber
Forum North, Rust Avenue
Whangarei

In Attendance	Cr Greg Innes (Chairperson) Her Worship the Mayor Sheryl Mai Cr Stu Bell Cr Vince Cocurullo Cr Tricia Cutforth Cr Shelley Deeming Cr Sue Glen Cr Phil Halse Cr Cherry Hermon Cr Greg Martin Cr Sharon Morgan Cr Anna Murphy
Not in Attendance	Cr Crichton Christie

In attendance:

Chief Executive (Rob Forlong), General Manager Planning and Development (Alison Geddes), General Manager Community (Sandra Boardman), Manager Democracy and Assurance (Jason Marris), Manager Strategy (Tony Horton), Strategic Planner (Shireen Munday), Team Leader Democracy (Nicolene Pestana) and Senior Democracy Adviser (C Brindle)

1. Declarations of Interest

2. Apologies

Cr Crichton Christie (absent)
Crs Stu Bell and Sharon Morgan (late arrival)

Moved By Cr Greg Innes

Seconded By Cr Phil Halse

That the apologies be sustained.

Carried

Crs Bell and Morgan joined the meeting at 9.01am following Item 2.

3. Decision Reports

3.1 Deliberations - proposed Animals Bylaw

Item 3.1 was taken in parts.

Moved By Cr Sue Glen

Seconded By Cr Stu Bell

1. That the Planning and Development Committee approves the recommendations as contained in the report and the associated attachments as follows:

A. Obligations of animal owners in general

That clause 6.1(d), as highlighted yellow in Attachment 1, is deleted from the final Animals Bylaw.

B. Cats – microchipping and de-sexing

That the Planning and Development Committee notes the submissions and that no associated changes to the proposed Bylaw are made.

Carried

Moved By Cr Vince Cocurullo

Seconded By Cr Cherry Hermon

C. Bees

That clause 9 and the associated definition of 'hives' in clause 5 as highlighted yellow in Attachment 1 are amended as per the provided track changes.

Carried

Moved By Cr Cherry Hermon

Seconded By Her Worship the Mayor

D. General matters

That all changes showing in track changes in Attachment 1 are made to the final Animals Bylaw.

Carried

Moved By Cr Sharon Morgan

Seconded By Cr Cherry Hermon

2. That the Planning and Development Committee recommends to Council that it makes the final Animals Bylaw, incorporating all resolutions made at this meeting.

Carried

3.2 Deliberations - proposed Parking and Traffic Bylaw

Item 3.2 was taken in parts.

Moved By Cr Sue Glen

Seconded By Cr Shelley Deeming

1. That the Planning and Development Committee approves the recommendations as contained in this report and the associated attachments as follows:

A. Mobility parking

That the Planning and Development Committee notes the submissions and that no associated changes to the proposed Bylaw are made.

Carried

Crs Cocurullo and Murphy requested their votes against be recorded.

Moved By Cr Shelley Deeming

Seconded By Cr Stu Bell

B. Electric vehicle parking

That the Planning and Development Committee notes the submissions and that no associated changes to the proposed Bylaw are made.

Carried

Moved By Cr Shelley Deeming

Seconded By Cr Anna Murphy

C. Technical/wording issues

That the Planning and Development Committee notes the submissions and that the proposed changes provided in section 4.2 F, G, H and I of this report, appropriately address the matters raised by submitters.

Carried

Moved By Cr Stu Bell

Seconded By Her Worship the Mayor

D. Heavy motor vehicle parking

That the Planning and Development Committee notes the submissions and that no associated changes to the proposed Bylaw are made.

Carried

Moved By Cr Phil Halse

Seconded By Cr Shelley Deeming

E. Heavy motor vehicle restrictions

That the Planning and Development Committee notes the submissions and that no associated changes to the proposed Bylaw are made.

Carried

Moved By Cr Shelley Deeming

Seconded By Cr Sue Glen

F. General matters

That all changes showing in track changes in Attachment 1 are made to the final Parking and Traffic Bylaw.

G. Clause 15 – parking places

That clause 15.4, as highlighted yellow in Attachment 1 is included in the final Parking and Traffic Bylaw.

H. Clause 24 – reserved parking

That clause 24, as highlighted yellow in Attachment 1 is deleted from the final Parking and Traffic Bylaw.

I. Clause 25 – parking off a roadway

That clause 25.2(2) as highlighted yellow in Attachment 1 is deleted from the final Parking and Traffic Bylaw.

J. Clause 26 – machinery or equipment on a road

That clause 26 as highlighted yellow in Attachment 1 is amended as per the provided track changes.

Carried

Moved By Cr Tricia Cutforth

Seconded By Cr Greg Martin

2. That the Planning and Development Committee recommends to Council that it makes the final Parking and Traffic Bylaw, incorporating all resolutions made at this meeting.

Carried

Cr Martin was absent from the meeting between 9.45am and 9.47am during discussions on D Heavy motor vehicle parking.

4. Public Excluded Business

There was no public excluded business.

5. Closure of Meeting

The meeting concluded at 9.53am.

Confirmed this 13th day of December 2017

Councillor Greg Innes (Chairperson)

Parking and Traffic Bylaw

Section 155 & 77 Local Government Act 2002 assessment

The current Parking and Traffic Bylaw (PTB) is made under the Local Government Act 2002 (LGA) and also references Land Transport related legislation.

The statutory review of the PTB requires an assessment under s155 of the LGA. This report details this assessment and should be read in conjunction with the 'Legislative process, analysis and consultation requirements' as attached to the Planning and Development Committee report of 14 September 2017, as well as the report itself. This assessment includes an analysis of the available reasonably practicable options to address the perceived problem, together with advantages and disadvantages of each in accordance with s77 LGA.

1. Assessment summary

1. The problems identified relating to vehicle and road use are required to be addressed by the Council. In brief, there appears to be a need to update the bylaw to reflect new legislation and changes to technology, and powers missing in the current bylaw that Council needs for enforcement purposes.
2. A bylaw is considered to be the most appropriate way of addressing the perceived problems.
3. The current bylaw is not the most appropriate form of bylaw.
4. The most reasonable practicable option is to revoke the existing bylaw and replace it with a new one.
5. The proposed bylaw is the most appropriate form of bylaw.
6. The proposed bylaw does not give rise to any NZ Bill of Rights implications.

2. Perceived problems

1. Activities related to vehicle and road use that are or could be problematic if not addressed by Council such as one way roads, U-turns and cycle lanes (currently covered) and livestock movement (not currently covered).
2. Activities related to parking that are problematic if not addressed by Council such as the need to restrict parking through time limits and or paid parking spaces (currently covered) or motorcycle parking spaces (not currently covered).
3. The main perceived problems are the unregulated use of roads and parking places for road safety and public convenience purposes. Unregulated parking could create hazards for other road users, pedestrians and motor vehicle users. For example, no rules at all could mean parking in dangerous locations on the road reserve.

The ability to impose time limits and charges and undertake associated enforcement is an effective method to support adequate supply and turnover of parking availability in the busier areas of the District.
4. Council sought community feedback on the current bylaw as part of the review on what problems the community would like to see remedied through a bylaw, which included, for example, an issue around heavy vehicle parking.

3. Is a bylaw the most appropriate way of addressing the problems?

The first step in a review process is always to assess what the perceived problem is and what mechanisms are available to Council to address the perceived problem. Table 1 outlines the assessment for each option available.

Table 1

Option	Outcome	Comments
Option A – no action taken to address perceived problems	Council would revoke the existing bylaw. Council would have no mechanisms available to control both traffic and parking behaviours in the District.	This option would not provide Council with any abilities to address the perceived problems and is therefore not recommended.
Option B – provide a non-regulatory policy on traffic and parking matters to address the perceived problem	Council would revoke the existing bylaw and develop a policy approach to the perceived problem. This would rely on voluntary compliance as it would not have any associated enforcement powers.	The fundamental difficulty with any voluntary compliance regime in this area is that individuals do not have an adequate incentive to comply. This option is not recommended.
Option C – provide a bylaw on traffic and parking matters.	Council has a bylaw that provides a policy approach to the relevant parking and traffic matters and this is supported through available enforcement activities.	This is the recommended option. Council has specific bylaw-making powers that allows it to make bylaws to address the perceived problems as outlined in this report. This options allows for enforcement activities for the benefit of all road users.

Option C is the preferred option.

4. Is the existing bylaw the most appropriate form of bylaw?

The current bylaw is not the most appropriate form of bylaw. The bylaw -

- appears overly prescriptive in some areas
- misses or is unclear on important powers in other areas
- duplicates powers Council already possesses under other legislation
- includes provisions that are difficult to enforce or address issues that are no longer considered sufficiently problematic to warrant inclusion in the bylaw
- needs to be revised to reflect current land transport legislation
- does not provide for changes to technology since the last review, such as parking payment methods.
- does not reflect modern drafting practice or use 'plain English' language.

The current bylaw was made under the Local Government Act 2002, the Local Government Act 1974, the Transport Act 1962, the Land Transport Act 1998 and the Land Transport Management Act.

Traffic and parking bylaw-making powers are now contained in section 22AB of the Land Transport Act 1998 (LTA), which was last amended in 2017 and was significantly amended in 2011. This includes the power to leave matters for Council resolution in s22AB(3).

The matters contained within s22AB have been assessed against the current bylaw and the perceived problems. All relevant matters are provided for within s22AB. Therefore, a PTB

can be made solely under the LTA, without reference to the LGA. Future reviews would only be subject to the provisions of the LTA rather than the LGA. It is noted for completeness that the LTA also provides that under s22AC LTA the Minister (currently the Minister of Transport) may amend, replace or disallow a bylaw made under the LTA.

5. Reasonably practicable options

The review requirements of section 160(2) of the LGA have now been addressed within this report. The Committee now has four options to consider in accordance with section 160(3) of the LGA as outlined in Table 2 below. These options also provide a link to the decision-making requirements of section 77 of the LGA, including the identification of reasonably practicable options.

Table 2

Option	Description	Advantages	Disadvantages
Option A - Amend the existing bylaw	Adopt a statement of proposal for public consultation including the proposed amended bylaw.	None identified.	Inconsistent with the analysis in this report regarding the appropriate form of bylaw. A significant amount of changes required, including the legislation under which the bylaw should be made.
Option B - Keep the bylaw as it is	Adopt a statement of proposal for public consultation with the current bylaw.	No changes to current situation, no new rules for community.	Inconsistent with the analysis in this report regarding the appropriate form of bylaw.
Option C - Revoke the bylaw	Adopt a statement of proposal for public consultation stating Council's intention to revoke the bylaw.	Reduces Council's enforcement activity requirements.	As per Table 1 of this report, not considered a reasonably practicable option in accordance with s77(1)(a) of the LGA.
Option D - Revoke and replace the bylaw	Adopt a statement of proposal for public consultation including a new bylaw.	As outlined in section 4 of this report.	Only able to address matters contained within s22AB LTA.

The analysis undertaken and described in this report shows that the most appropriate option is to revoke the existing bylaw and replace it with a new bylaw, made under the Land Transport Act 1998.

6. Is the proposed bylaw the most appropriate form of bylaw

The proposed bylaw addresses the perceived problems and overcomes the issues with the current bylaw. It -

- is not overly prescriptive
- adds important powers missed in the current bylaw
- removes duplication of powers Council already possesses under other legislation
- reflects legal developments and modern drafting practice
- uses plain English.

The Statement of Proposal for the new bylaw provides a more detailed overview of the proposed content changes.

7. Does the proposed bylaw give rise to any implications under the New Zealand Bill of Rights Act 1990

The only right or freedom under NZBORA potentially affected by the proposed bylaw is potentially the right to freedom of movement. Limitations on that right in the bylaw must be no more than is reasonably necessary to achieve the purpose of regulating parking in public places and providing traffic management controls to protect the public from nuisance and promote and maintain public health and safety. Council will have to bear this requirement in mind when it comes to establishing site specific controls by resolution as provided for in the bylaw.

Register of Resolutions

Whangarei District Council

Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017

Table of contents

1. Shared Paths.....	2
2. Cycle lanes.....	5
3. Motorcycle parking	6
4. Shared zones	7

Whangarei District Council
Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017
Register of Resolutions



1. Shared Paths

Date of resolution:	14 December 2017	Date in force:	15 December 2017
Date amended:		Amended by:	

The following paths are designated as shared paths in accordance with clause 9 of the Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017, for the use of some, or all of the following categories:

- (a) pedestrians
- (b) cyclists
- (c) riders of mobility devices
- (d) riders of wheeled recreational devices.

All paths are signed and/or marked in accordance with legislative requirements.

Location/ Name	Technical Description						Priority	Categories
Beach Road, Onerahi	Ref ID	Start	Start Location	End	End Location	Length	Nil	All
	1985	0	BEACH RD (RP2480)	215	BEACH RD (RP2695)	215		
	1985	215	BEACH RD (RP2695)	866	PAH RD (RP340)	651		
	1985	875	PAH RD (RP340)	1243	WAIMAHANGA TRACK	368		
Canopy Bridge	Ref ID	Start	Start Location	End	End Location	Length	Nil	All
	2036	0	SP HATEA LOOP	22	START VIC CANOPY BRIDGE	22		
	2036	22	START VIC CANOPY BRIDGE	90	END VIC CANOPY BRIDGE	68		
	2036	90	END VIC CANOPY BRIDGE	196	QUAYSIDE ST	106		
First Ave	Ref ID	Start	Start Location	End	End Location	Length	Nil	All
	1986	0	MAUNU RD (RP325)	54	START- CARRUTH PARK FOOTBRIDGE	54		
	1986	54	START- CARRUTH PARK FOOTBRIDGE	59	END- CARRUTH PARK FOOTBRIDGE	5		
	1986	59	END- CARRUTH PARK FOOTBRIDGE	292	CENTRAL AVE (RP110)	233		
		304	CENTRAL AVE (RP110)	471	START- FIRST AVE FOOTBRIDGE	167		

Whangarei District Council
Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017
Register of Resolutions



Location/ Name	Technical Description						Priority	Categories
	Ref ID	Start	Start Location	End	End Location	Length		
Hatea Loop	1989	0	VICTORIA CANOPY BRIDGE	1253	RIVERSIDE DR (RP1.445)	1253	Nil	All
	1989	1253	RIVERSIDE DR (RP1.445)	2107	START- TE MATAU A POHE (RP 0.426)	854		
	1989	2107	START- TE MATAU A POHE (RP 0.426)	2514	END- TE MATAU A POHE (RP 0.018)	407		
	1989	2514	END- TE MATAU A POHE (RP 0.018)	3031	START- KOTUITUI WHITINGA FOOTBRIDGE	517		
	1989	3031	START- KOTUITUI WHITINGA FOOTBRIDGE	3136	END- KOTUITUI WHITINGA FOOTBRIDGE	105		
	1989	3136	END- KOTUITUI WHITINGA FOOTBRIDGE	3917	START BOARDWALK	781		
	1990	0	TE MATAU A POHE	240	HATEA LOOP	240		
	1991	0	TE MATAU A POHE	114	HATEA LOOP	114		
	1992	0	HATEA LOOP	100	HIHIAUA LOOP	100		
Onerahi Link	1988	0	OKARA DR/PORT RD RAB	230	START- TE MATAU A POHE (RP 0.018)	230	Nil	All
	1988	230	START- TE MATAU A POHE (RP 0.018)	638	END- TE MATAU A POHE (RP 0.426)	408		
	1988	638	END- TE MATAU A POHE (RP 0.426)	1818	RIVERSIDE DR (RP 2.220)	1180		

Whangarei District Council
Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017
Register of Resolutions



Location/ Name	Technical Description						Priority	Categories
	Ref ID	Start	Start Location	End	End Location	Length		
Riverside Drive	2023	0	SP ONERAHI LINK	90	BRIDGE (DUCK CREEK) START	90	Nil	All
	2023	90	BRIDGE (DUCK CREEK) START	125	BRIDGE (DUCK CREEK) END	35		
	2023	125	BRIDGE (DUCK CREEK) END	1240	BRIDGE (AWAROA CREEK) START	1115		
	2023	1240	BRIDGE (AWAROA CREEK) START	1270	BRIDGE (AWAROA CREEK) END	30		
	2023	1270	BRIDGE (AWAROA CREEK) END	1985	BRIDGE (CLOTHWORTHYS) START	715		
	2023	1985	BRIDGE (CLOTHWORTHYS) START	2010	BRIDGE (CLOTHWORTHYS) END	25		
	2023	2010	BRIDGE (CLOTHWORTHYS) END	2290	WAIMAHANGA TRACK	280		
Tarewa Park	1987	0	RAUMANGA VALLEY RD (RP760)	93	START- RAUMANGA VALLEY FOOTBRIDGE	93	Nil	All
	1987	93	START- RAUMANGA VALLEY FOOTBRIDGE	116	END- RAUMANGA VALLEY FOOTBRIDGE	23		
	1987	116	END- RAUMANGA VALLEY FOOTBRIDGE	802	START- TE MAI RD FOOTBRIDGE	686		
	1987	802	START- TE MAI RD FOOTBRIDGE	830	END- TE MAI RD FOOTBRIDGE	28		
	1987	830	END- TE MAI RD FOOTBRIDGE	1140	OTAIKA RD (RP 01N-266-0.429)	310		
	1987	1157	OTAIKA RD (RP 01N-266-0.429)	1572	START- BERNARD FOOTBRIDGE	415		

Whangarei District Council
Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017
Register of Resolutions



2. Cycle lanes

Date of resolution:	14 December 2017	Date in force:	15 December 2017
Date amended:		Amended by:	

The following on-road locations are designated as cycle lanes (special vehicle lanes) in accordance with clause 10 of the Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017. All cycle lanes are signed and/or marked in accordance with legislative requirements.

ROAD NAME	ROAD ID	SIDE	RAMM DISPLACEMENT		LENGTH	DESCRIPTION
			START	END		
Dent Street	113	Right	199	384	185	Northern side of Dent Street from Dent Street/Walton Street intersection to Dent Street/Riverside Drive intersection
Dent Street	113	Right	418	450	32	Northern side of Dent Street from Dent Street/Riverside Drive intersection to 32m west of the intersection
Hatea Drive	173	Right	25	115	90	Eastern side of Hatea Drive from Hatea Drive/Riverside Drive intersection to 90m north of the intersection
Riverside Drive North	1471	Left	550	795	245	Southern side of Riverside Drive from Riverside Drive/Ewing Road intersection to Riverside Drive/Hatea Drive intersection
Riverside Drive South	1124	Left	20	335	315	Northern side of Riverside Drive from Riverside Drive/Hatea Drive intersection to 315m east of the intersection
Riverside Drive South	1124	Right	1450	2035	585	Southern side of Riverside Drive from 50m east of Riverside Drive/Memorial Drive intersection to 30m west of Riverside Drive/Dave Culham Drive roundabout
Porowini Avenue	327	Right	580	700	120	Southern side of Porowini Avenue from 80m east of Porowini Avenue/Kaka Street intersection to 40m west of Porowini Avenue/Kaka Street intersection
Kensington Avenue	217	Left	10	97	87	Southern side of Kensington Avenue from Kensington Avenue/Kamo Road intersection to 87m west of the intersection
Kensington Avenue	217	Right	10	62	52	Northern side of Kensington Avenue from Kensington Avenue/Kamo Road intersection to 62m west of the intersection
Nixon Street	295	Left	12	37	25	Northern side of Nixon Street from Nixon Street/Kamo Road intersection to 25m east of the intersection
Nixon Street	295	Left	264	313	49	Northern side of Nixon Street from Nixon Street/Mill Road intersection to 49m west of the intersection
Nixon Street	295	Left	339	539	200	Northern side of Nixon Street from Nixon Street/Mill Road intersection to 200m east of the intersection
Nixon Street	295	Right	339	417	78	Southern side of Nixon Street from Nixon Street/Mill Road intersection to 78m east of the intersection

Whangarei District Council
Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017
Register of Resolutions



ROAD NAME	ROAD ID	SIDE	RAMM DISPLACEMENT		LENGTH	DESCRIPTION
			START	END		
Mill Road	266	Left	755	805	50	Western side of Mill Road from Mill Road/Nixon Street intersection to 50m north of the intersection
Mill Road	266	Right	755	805	50	Eastern side of Mill Road from Mill Road/Nixon Street intersection to 50m north of the intersection
Mill Road	266	Left	611	724	113	Western side of Mill Road from Mill Road/Nixon Street intersection to 113m south of the intersection
Mill Road	266	Right	611	724	113	Eastern side of Mill Road from Mill Road/Nixon Street intersection to 113m south of the intersection

3. Motorcycle parking

Date of resolution:	14 December 2017	Date in force:	15 December 2017
Date amended:		Amended by:	

The following locations are designated as motorcycle parking in accordance with clause 8 of the Parking and Traffic Bylaw. All motorcycle parks are signed and/or marked in accordance with legislative requirements.

Location	Description/map reference	Time limit	Parking fee
Carruth Street	Map reference - Sheet 41	Nil	Nil
Rathbone Street	Map reference - Sheet 42	Nil	Nil
Forum North Carpark	Map reference - Sheet 43	Nil	Nil

The maps referred to in the table above are provided in Appendix 1.

Whangarei District Council
Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017
Register of Resolutions



4. Shared zones

Date of resolution:	14 December 2017	Date in force:	15 December 2017
Date amended:		Amended by:	

The following location(s) are designated as shared zones in accordance with clause 11 of the Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017.

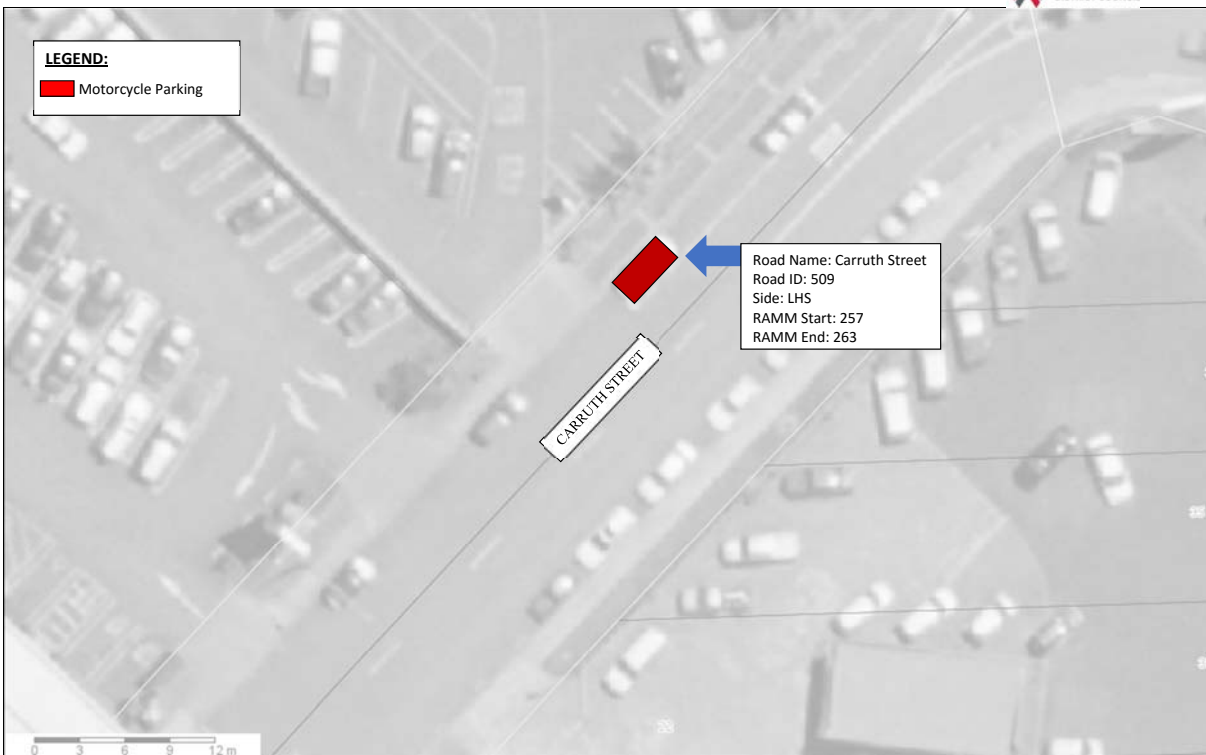
Location	Technical Description/map reference	Additional restrictions														
Cameron Street - Laneway		Nil														
	<table><tr><th>ROAD NAME</th><th>RAMM ID</th><th>START DISP</th><th>END DISP</th><th>LENGTH</th></tr><tr><td>Cameron Street</td><td>75</td><td>70</td><td>240</td><td>170</td></tr><tr><td>James Street</td><td>202</td><td>0</td><td>70</td><td>70</td></tr></table>	ROAD NAME	RAMM ID	START DISP	END DISP	LENGTH	Cameron Street	75	70	240	170	James Street	202	0	70	70
ROAD NAME	RAMM ID	START DISP	END DISP	LENGTH												
Cameron Street	75	70	240	170												
James Street	202	0	70	70												
	Map reference - Sheet SZ-01															

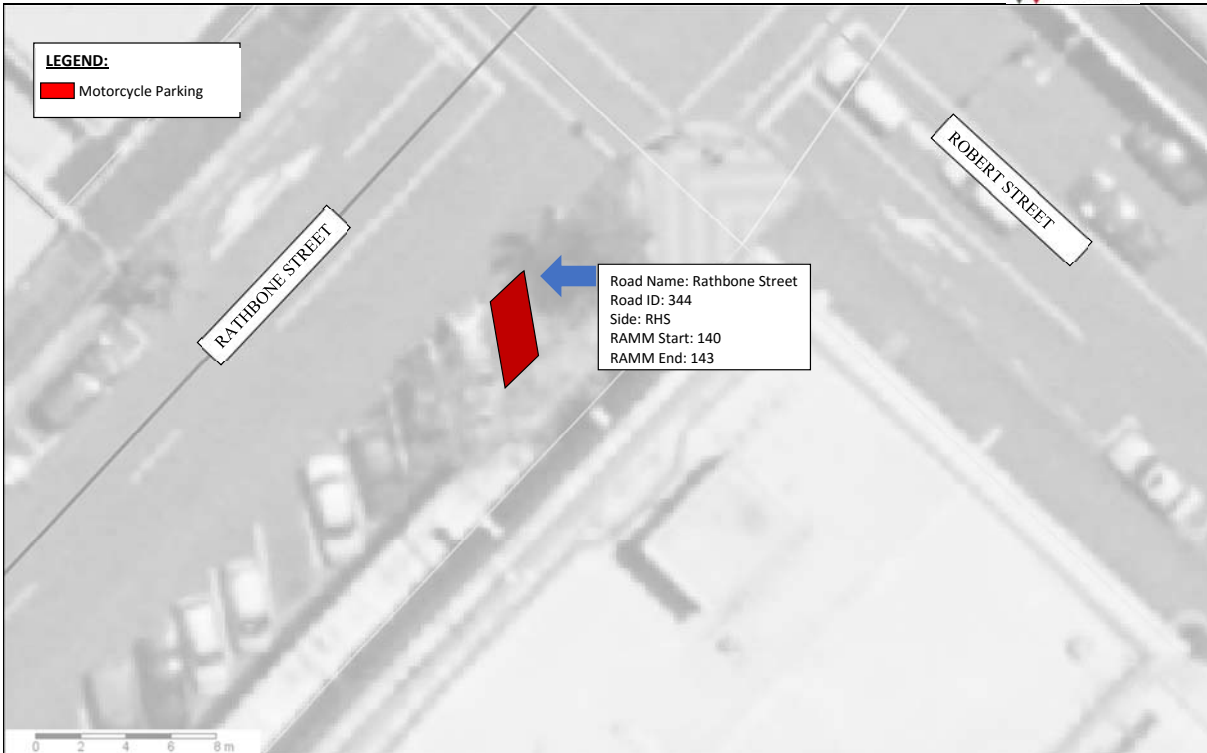
The maps referred to in the table above are provided in Appendix 2.

Whangarei District Council
Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017
Register of resolutions

Appendix 1 - Motorcycle parking

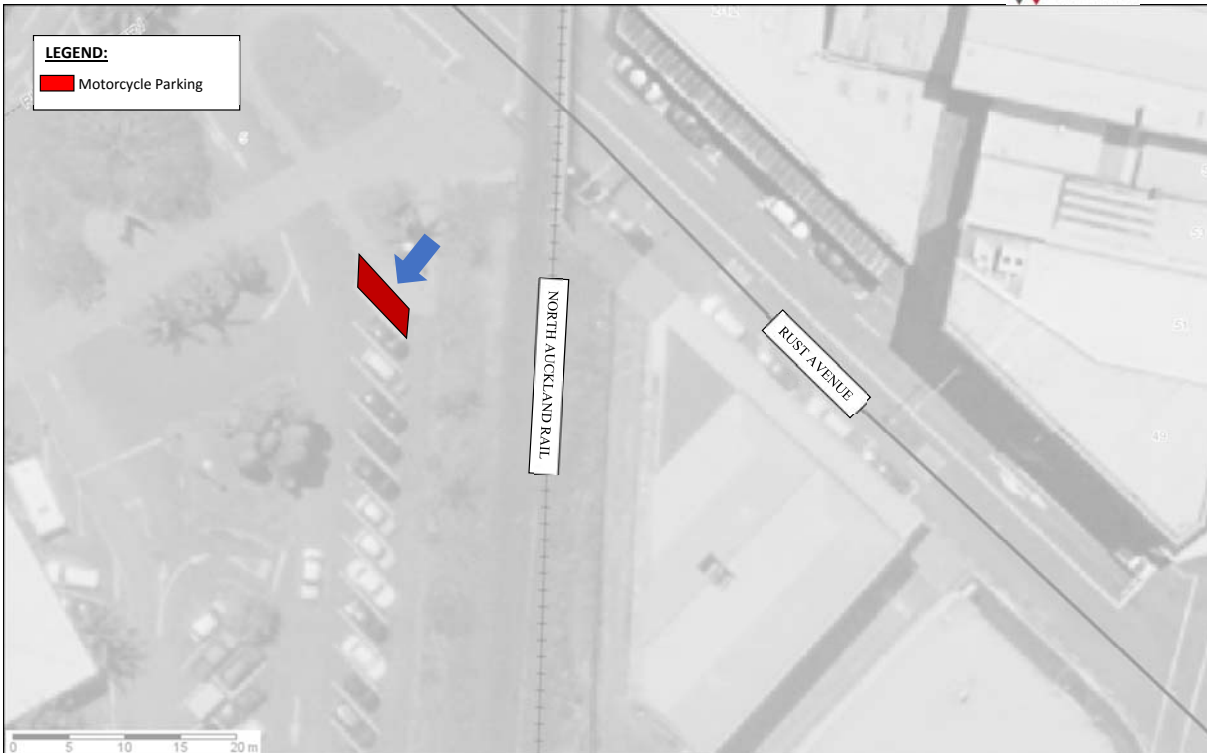
MOTORCYCLE PARKING – CARRUTH STREET – SHEET 41





Scale: 1:300
Original Sheet Size A4
Map Produced – November 2017

MOTORCYCLE PARKING – FORUM NORTH OFF-STREET CARPARK – SHEET 43

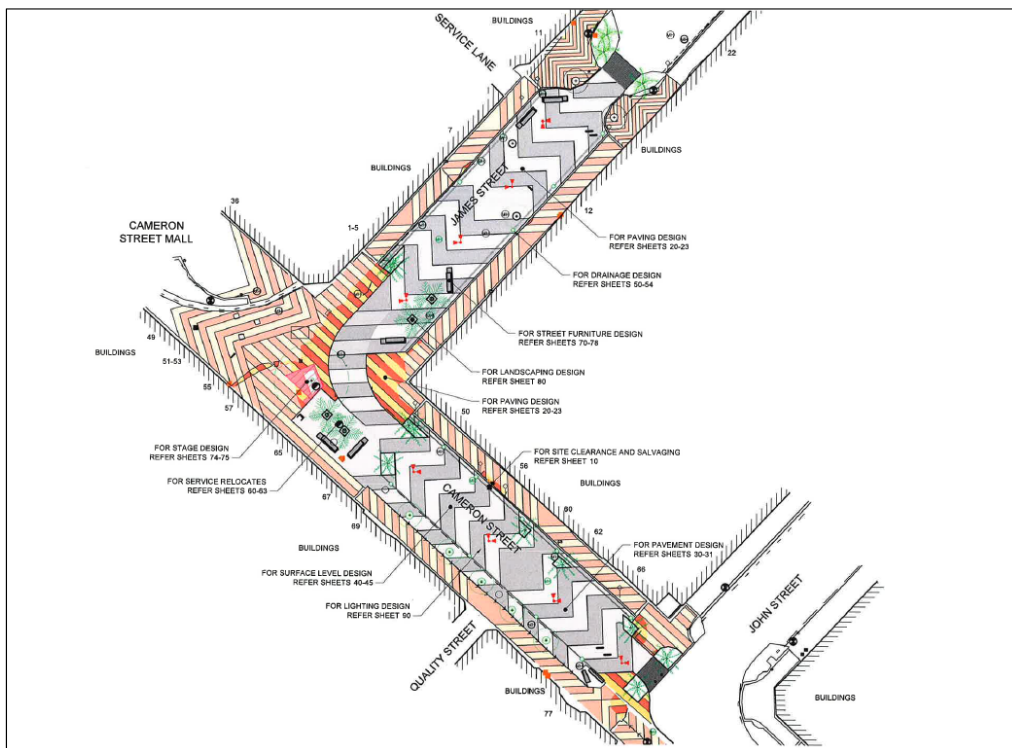


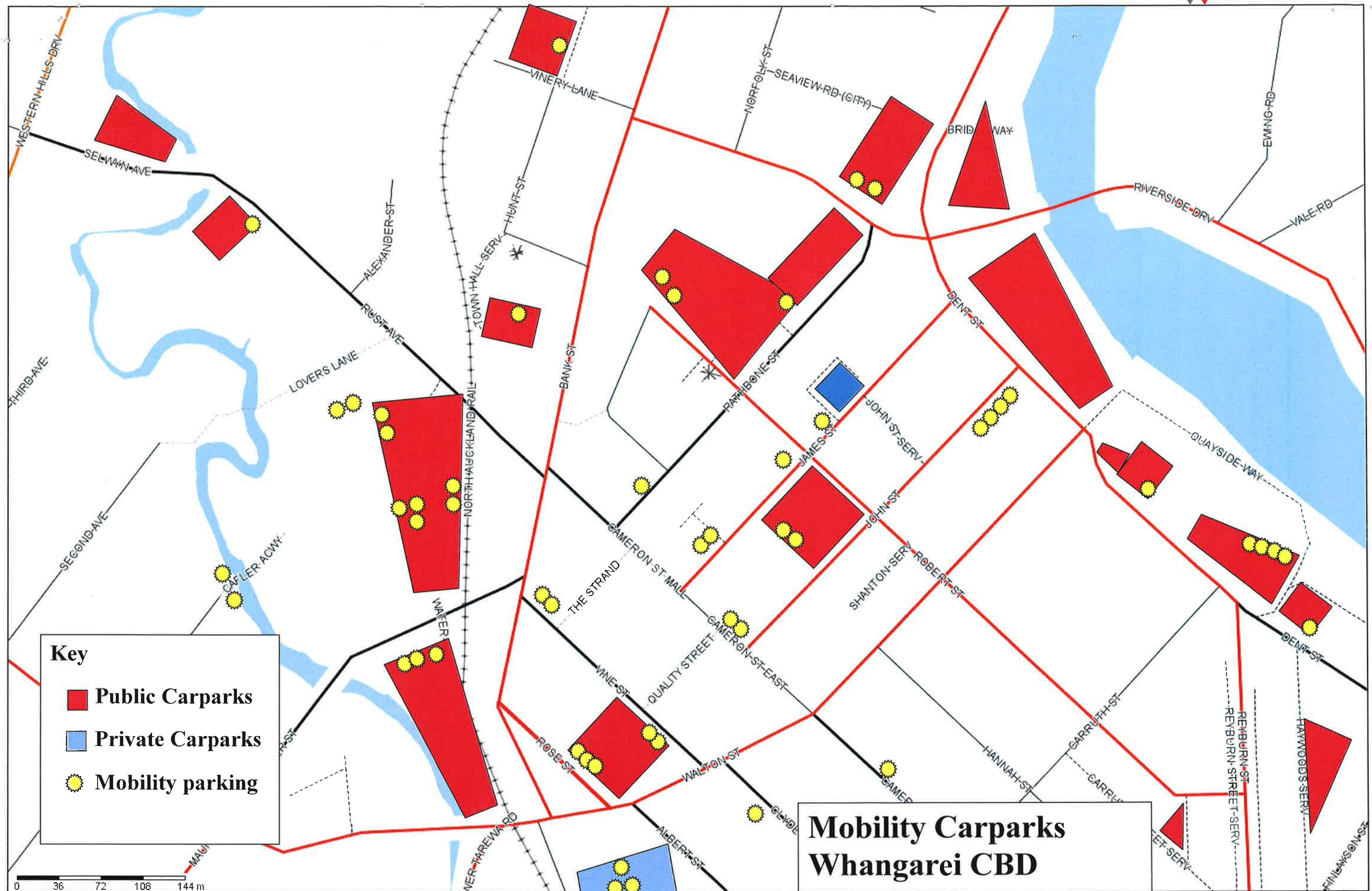
Scale: 1:300
Original Sheet Size A4
Map Produced – November 2017

Whangarei District Council
Parking and Traffic Bylaw 2017
Register of Resolutions

Appendix 2 – Shared zones

SHARED ZONE – LANEWAY – SHEET SZ-01





7.4 Animals Bylaw 2017

Meeting: Whangarei District Council
Date of meeting: 14 December 2017
Reporting officer: Shireen Munday – Strategic Planner

1 Purpose

To make the Animals Bylaw 2017.

2 Recommendations

That Council

1. determines that -
 - i. in accordance with section 155(1) of the Local Government Act 2002, a bylaw is the most appropriate way of addressing the perceived problems
 - ii. the proposed bylaw is the most appropriate form of bylaw
 - iii. there are no New Zealand Bill of Rights implications.
2. makes the Animals Bylaw 2017 contained in Attachment 1 in accordance with section 146 of the Local Government Act 2002, with effect from 15 December 2017
3. confirms the delegations proposed in Section 3 of the 'Additional Information to Animals Bylaw' (Attachment 1), which provide for officers to exercise powers under the Bylaw
4. authorises the Chief Executive, in consultation with Her Worship the Mayor Sheryl Mai, to make any minor edits or amendments to the Bylaw to correct any identified errors or typographical edits, or to reflect decisions made by Council at this meeting.

3 Discussion

3.1 Overview

The Planning and Development Committee has undertaken a review of Council's Keeping of Animals, Poultry and Bees Bylaw. As part of that process, the Committee made the appropriate determinations under section 155 of the Local Government Act 2002, consulted with the public, and held deliberations to decide on the final form and content of a new Animals Bylaw (the Bylaw).

At the deliberations meeting on 22 November 2017, the Planning and Development Committee approved all recommendations for final changes to the Bylaw. The final version of the Bylaw as approved by the Planning and Development Committee is provided in Attachment 1.

The Planning and Development Committee then resolved to recommend to Council to make the final Animals Bylaw, incorporating the resolutions made at the deliberations meeting. The agenda report and associated minutes of that meeting are provided in Attachment 2.

3.2 Section 155 Local Government Act 2002 considerations

When making a bylaw, Council is required to satisfy itself that:

- a bylaw is the most appropriate way of addressing the perceived problems
- the proposed bylaw is the most appropriate form of bylaw
- there are no New Zealand Bill of Rights implications.

As part of adopting a Statement of Proposal for consultation, the Planning and Development Committee made determinations on these matters on 14 September 2017. Attachment 3 is the section 155 analysis provided to the Committee at that meeting to support its decision-making process. For completeness, it is recommended that Council reviews and confirms these determinations, taking into consideration the changes made to the Bylaw as a result of the consultation process.

3.3 Revocation of the Keeping of Animals, Poultry and Bees Bylaw

The process undertaken by the Planning and Development Committee identified that the existing Keeping of Animals, Poultry and Bees Bylaw will be automatically revoked on December 14, in accordance with section 160A of the Local Government Act 2002. No further decisions are required of Council on this matter.

4 Implementation

Council staff will be working with the enforcement contractor to update any standard operating procedures, develop new processes and procedures as well as any application forms as required. No other implementation activities are required to support the new Bylaw and enforcement staff will continue to respond to and manage complaints as they are made.

5 Significance and Engagement

5.1 Significance

The decisions and matters of this agenda do not trigger the significance criteria of Council's Significance and Engagement Policy.

5.2 Engagement

Council has consulted with the community on the issues of this agenda in accordance with the statutory requirements of the Local Government Act 2002.

Council will publicly notify the new Bylaw in accordance with the requirements of section 157 of the Local Government Act 2002. The public will also be informed via agenda publication on Council's website.

6 Attachments

- 1 – Final Animals Bylaw 2017
- 2 - Agenda report for 22 November 2017 deliberations meeting
- 3 – s155 analysis

Attachment 1

Animals Bylaw

Table of contents

1	Title	2
2	Commencement	2
3	Application	2
4	Purpose	2
5	Interpretation	2
6	Obligations of animal owners in general	4
7	Keeping poultry in urban areas	4
8	Keeping stock in urban areas	4
9	Keeping bees in urban areas	5
10	Consequences of breach of bylaws	7
11	Penalties	7
12	Savings	7
	Additional information to Animals Bylaw 2017	8

Attachment 1

1 Title

This Bylaw is the Animals Bylaw 2017.

2 Commencement

15 December 2017.

3 Application

This Bylaw applies to the Whangarei District.

Part 1 – Preliminary Provisions

4 Purpose

The purpose of this Bylaw is to provide for the ownership of animals (excluding dogs) in a way that protects the public from nuisance and maintains and promotes public health and safety.

Explanatory note: The Bylaw supplements, rather than duplicates other animal owner obligations, including but not limited to; the Animal Products Act 1999, Animal Welfare Act 1999, related codes of welfare and the Northland Regional Pest and Marine Pathway Management Plan 2017 – 2027. Council also has responsibilities and powers regarding animals under the Biosecurity Act 1993, Health Act 1956, Impounding Act 1955, Reserves Act 1977, Resource Management Act 1991 and the Whangarei District Plan. Matters relating to the control of dogs are addressed in the Dog Management Bylaw 2013 and the Dog Control Act 1996.

5 Interpretation

5.1 In this Bylaw, unless the context otherwise requires:

Animal means any member of the animal kingdom, including any mammal, bird, finfish, shellfish, reptile, amphibian, insect or invertebrate, and includes their young or eggs and the carcass or its constituent parts, but does not include humans or dogs.

Beehive and hive means any receptacle housing a honey bee colony for the purposes of honey production, and includes 1 receptacle per colony used solely for the purposes of queen breeding, hive maintenance and swarm prevention purposes between 1 October and 31 March.

Council means the Whangarei District Council

Enforcement Officer means an enforcement officer appointed under section 177 of the Local Government Act 2002

Nuisance means a person, animal, thing or circumstance causing unreasonable interference with the peace, comfort or convenience of another person, and includes the nuisances as defined in section 29 of the Health Act 1956

Explanatory note: Circumstances that may be deemed a nuisance can include noises and odour associated with keeping animals.

Owner, in relation to any animal, means a person who has an animal in their possession or custody, or under that person's care, control, or supervision, and includes the parent or guardian of a person under the age of 16 years who -

- (a) owns the animal; and
- (b) is a member of the parent's or guardian's household living with and dependant on the parent or guardian; -

Attachment 1

but does not include any person who has seized or taken custody of an animal under the Animal Welfare Act 1999 or the National Parks Act 1980 or the Conservation Act 1987 or any order made under the Animal Welfare Act 1999.

Person has the meaning given by the Interpretation Act 1999.

Permit means a licence, permit or approval to do something under this Bylaw and includes all conditions to which the permit is subject.

Poultry means any live bird that is kept or raised to produce eggs, hatching eggs or poultry products or for rearing on behalf of any other person, and includes chickens, ducks, geese, peacocks, peahens, pheasants and roosters.

Premises means any private land that is occupied or unoccupied.

Stock means cattle, deer, llamas, alpacas, donkeys, mules, horses, sheep, goats, pigs and any other animal kept in captivity, or farmed, and dependant on humans for their care and sustenance.

Swarm means a cluster or flying mass of honey bees, including workers, queen and drones.

Urban area means all Environments of the Whangarei District Plan; except for the following Environments:

- (a) Countryside Environment
- (b) Coastal Countryside Environment
- (c) Rural Living Environment (or any alternative final title for this Environment as an outcome of the Whangarei District Plan review)
- (d) Rural Countryside Environment (or any alternative final title for this Environment as an outcome of the Whangarei District Plan review)
- (e) Rural 'Urban Expansion' Environment – un-serviced sites only (or any alternative final title for this Environment as an outcome of the Whangarei District Plan review)

Explanatory note: The rolling review of the Whangarei District Plan intends to change the names of the primarily rural environments of the District as part of that review. This review has yet to be finalised and the titles provided are provisional. Any changes to the titles will be dealt with through an amendment pursuant to section 156(2) of the Local Government Act 2002 to formalise the final names of the environments.

5.2 Any explanatory notes and attachments are for information purposes, do not form part of this Bylaw, and may be inserted, amended or revoked without formality.

5.3 The Interpretation Act 1999 applies to this Bylaw.

Attachment 1

Part 2 – General requirements

6 Obligations of animal owners in general

- 6.1 The owner or person in charge of any animal must always:
- (a) ensure that animal does not cause a nuisance to any other person
 - (b) ensure that animal does not cause a risk to public health and safety
 - (c) ensure that animal does not damage any property belonging to any other person.
- 6.2 Any owner who, in the opinion of an enforcement officer, fails to comply with these obligations, must act on any requests of the enforcement officer to comply with these obligations, including, if directed, to remove the animals from the property within a specified period.

Explanatory note: Animal owners are required under the Animal Welfare Act 1999 to provide for the physical, health and behavioural needs of their animals, including food, water, shelter and exercise.

Part 3: Specific restrictions

7 Keeping poultry in urban areas

- 7.1 No person may keep a rooster on any premises in an urban area.
- 7.2 A person may keep up to six head of poultry in an urban area on premises smaller than 2000 square metres.
- 7.3 A person may keep up to 12 head of poultry in an urban area on premises of 2000 square metres or more.

8 Keeping stock in urban areas

- 8.1 A person must not keep stock in an urban area on premises smaller than 4000 square metres.
- 8.2 Council may issue permits to keep stock in an urban area on premises of 4000 square metres or more.
- 8.3 Council may issue permits to persons to keep stock whose premises, due to plan changes to the Whangarei District Plan after the date of this Bylaw coming into force, change from a rural to an urban environment.
- 8.4 Council may prescribe any conditions, including specifying distances from boundaries, maximum number of permissible stock and time limits on permits issued.
- 8.5 Council may by resolution:
- (a) charge a fee for receiving and processing an application and issuing a permit
 - (b) prescribe any charges to be paid for the use of a permit
 - (c) determine situations when permit fees may be remitted, refunded or waived.
- 8.6 A permit may be cancelled by Council at any time.

Attachment 1

9 Keeping bees in urban areas

- 9.1 No person shall keep bees in the District if in the opinion of an enforcement officer, the keeping of bees is likely to become a nuisance or potential danger to any person.
- 9.2 Council may prescribe conditions relating to the location and number of hives able to be kept on any premises in an urban area.
- 9.3 Where an enforcement officer considers a hive or hives is likely to become a nuisance or potential danger to any person, it may require removal of such hive(s).
- 9.4 A person may keep bees in the urban areas as follows:

Property area	Maximum number of hives
700 square metres or less	2
701-4000 square metres	4
4001 square metres or greater	6

- 9.5 Council may issue permits to persons to keep additional hives to those permitted under clause 9.4.
- 9.6 Council may prescribe any conditions, including specifying distances from boundaries, maximum number of hives and time limits on permits issued.
- 9.7 Council may by resolution:
- (d) charge a fee for receiving and processing an application and issuing a permit
 - (e) prescribe any charges to be paid for the use of a permit
 - (f) determine situations when permit fees may be remitted, refunded or waived.
- 9.8 A permit may be cancelled by Council at any time.

Explanatory note:

Beekeepers have a legal obligation to register their apiary under the Biosecurity (National American Foulbrood Pest Management Plan) Order 1998. Registration of apiaries is intended to protect honey bees from American foulbrood disease. The register also allows the Ministry for Primary Industries to carry out surveillance for exotic pests and diseases of honey bees and respond to an incursion. Registrations are processed byASURE Quality Ltd and registration codes are required to be displayed in a visible manner in each apiary, usually on a beehive. Further information on American foulbrood disease can be found at www.afb.org.nz. In addition to the registration of hives, beekeepers are also required to comply with the on-going management requirements as provided in the AFB Pest Management Plan and are required to provide evidence of this compliance where required. Honey and bee products that are produced for commercial purposes are also subject to additional legal requirements, such as the Food Act 2014. Information on these requirements is available on the Ministry for Primary Industries website.

Apiculture New Zealand Incorporated provides a Code of Conduct for beekeepers.

In cases where enforcement officers respond to complaints about bees, the initial assessment will include determining whether the bees are being kept in accordance with national regulations as well as the Apiculture NZ Code of Conduct.

Additional Guidelines

Compliance with the following guidelines is also recommended to minimise potential nuisances arising from urban beekeeping activities. Whangarei District Council also advises every person wishing to keep bees in an urban area to participate in a beekeeping course.

Attachment 1

Flight path management

Honey bees will fly at head height for some distance from their hives unless their surrounding environment directs their flight path upwards. Honey bees can be encouraged to fly above head height if a flyway barrier, two or more metres tall, is placed 1-2 metres out from the front of the hive entrance. It is important that flightpaths are not directed across public pathways on private and public land. Barriers that can be used include shrubs or trees, a wall, a hedge or a fence. Beehives can be placed on top of sheds or buildings but it may be more difficult to work with the bees in these restricted locations.

Swarming/seasonal build up

Swarming is the natural means of dispersal of honey bee colonies. However, beekeepers can undertake responsible bee management practices to minimise the occurrence of swarms in urban areas. These practices can include re-queening on an annual basis, taking a nucleus colony out of populous hives (artificial swarming) and re-queening colonies that have been started from swarms.

Honey bee colonies are more likely to swarm if there are limited cells in the hive for the worker bees to store honey and pollen. Responsible bee management practices include providing plenty of room for the queen to lay eggs and for the bees to store honey.

Water provision

Providing a source of clean water may reduce the number of bees foraging elsewhere for water and creating a nuisance to neighbours, especially if they own a swimming pool.

Bee excrement management

Like other animals, bees excrete waste products. Honey bees going on orientation, foraging or cleaning flights often excrete after exiting the hive. This can leave distinct trails of coloured bee excrement within a 500 metre radius of the hive and can cause a nuisance to neighbours. The colour of the excrement is typically yellow to brown. The excrement may be hard to remove from clothing, vehicles and buildings.

Hives can be re-positioned on the property or rotated so that flight paths can be encouraged in a direction away from neighbouring properties.

Attachment 1

Part 4: Enforcement Powers

10 Consequences of breach of bylaws

- 10.1 Council may remove or alter a work or thing that is, or has been, constructed in breach of this Bylaw.
- 10.2 Council may recover the costs of removal or alteration from the person who committed the breach.
- 10.3 If an enforcement officer is issued with a warrant under the Search and Surveillance Act 2012 the enforcement officer may enter private property in an urban area pursuant to section 165 of the Local Government Act 2002 and:
 - (a) seize stock, poultry and bees that are on the premises in breach of this Bylaw
 - (b) seize property other than stock, poultry and bees that is materially involved in the commission of an offence under this Bylaw.

Part 5: Offences and Penalties

11 Penalties

- 11.1 It is an offence to breach this Bylaw with a penalty, on conviction, of a fine not exceeding \$20,000 under the Local Government Act 2002.

Part 7: Savings

12 Savings

- 12.1 Any permissions, approvals or other authorisations given under the Keeping of Animals Poultry and Bees Bylaw 2007 continue in force in accordance with their terms, unless cancelled by Council.

Attachment 1

Additional information to Animals Bylaw 2017

This document is for information purpose only and does not form part of this Bylaw. It contains matters made pursuant to this Bylaw and information to help users to understand, use and maintain this Bylaw. The document may be updated at any time.

Section 1: History of Bylaw

Action	Description	Date of decision	Commencement
Revoke	Keeping of Animals, Poultry and Bees Bylaw	NA	15 December 2017
Make	Animals Bylaw	14 December 2017	15 December 2017

Section 2: Related documents

Document	Description	Location	Date
<i>Reports to Council/Committee/Panels</i>			
2017 Bylaw review and consultation programme	Approval of the 2017 bylaws review programme	Council meetings webpage - link	18/5/2017
2017 Bylaw review pre-consultation programme	Approval of the pre-consultation programme	Council meetings webpage – link	15/6/2017
Adoption of Statement of Proposal for proposed Animals Bylaw	Statement of Proposal including draft Bylaw adoption for public consultation	Council meetings webpage - link	29/6/2017
Hearing – proposed Animals Bylaw consultation	Hearing for interested parties to share their views in person	Council meetings webpage - link	1/11/2017
Deliberations – proposed Animals Bylaw	Deliberations on submission issues raised	Council meetings webpage - link	22/11/2017
Making of Bylaw	Council makes final Bylaw	Council meetings webpage - link	14/12/2017

Attachment 1

Document	Description	Location	Date
<i>Legislation</i>			
Local Government Act 2002	Provides the functions, duties powers and penalties to make and enforce this Bylaw.	www.legislation.govt.nz	NA
Bylaws Act 1910	Provides for certain matters related to the validity of bylaws.	www.legislation.govt.nz	NA
Interpretations Act 1999	Provides for certain matters related to the interpretation of bylaws.	www.legislation.govt.nz	NA

Section 3: Delegations

Clause	Function,Duty,Power to be delegated	Delegated Authority	Delegation date	Delegation active date
All	All of its responsibilities, duties and powers under this bylaw, except - (a) the power to set fees (b) the power to make a decision for which a Council resolution is required (c) the power to hear and decided on any appeal process	Chief Executive	14 December 2017	15 December 2017

Section 4: Enforcement powers

Legislative provision	Description
Local Government Act 2002	162 Injunctions restraining commission of offences and breaches of bylaws 163 Removal of works in breach of bylaws 164 Seizure of property not on private land 165 Seizure of property from private land 168 Power to dispose of property seized and impounded 171 General power of entry 172 Power of entry for enforcement purposes 173 Power of entry in cases of emergency 175 Power to recover for damage by wilful or negligent behaviour 176 Costs of remedying damage arising from breach of bylaw 178 Enforcement officers may require certain information 183 Removal of fire hazards 185 Occupier may act if owner of premises makes default 186 Local authority may execute works if owner or occupier defaults 187 Recovery of cost of works by local authority 188 Liability for payments in respect of private land

Section 5: Offences and penalties

Provision	Description of offence	Maximum fine upon conviction	Infringement fee
All	A person who fails to comply with this Bylaw commits a breach of this bylaw and is liable to a penalty under the Local Government Act 2002	\$20,000	Nil

3.1 Deliberations – proposed Animals Bylaw

Meeting: Planning and Development Committee
Date of meeting: 22 November 2017
Reporting officer: Shireen Munday – Strategic Planner

1 Purpose

To deliberate on matters raised in submissions and further matters raised by staff to make a recommendation to Council on the final form and content of the proposed Animals Bylaw.

2 Recommendations

1. That the Planning and Development Committee approves the recommendations as contained in this report and the associated attachments as follows:
 - A. Obligations of animal owners in general**

That clause 6.1(d), as highlighted yellow in Attachment 1, is deleted from the final Animals Bylaw.
 - B. Cats – microchipping and de-sexing**

That the Planning and Development Committee notes the submissions and that no associated changes to the proposed Bylaw are made.
 - C. Bees**

That clause 9 and the associated definition of ‘hives’ in clause 5 as highlighted yellow in Attachment 1 are amended as per the provided track changes.
 - D. General matters**

That all changes showing in track changes in Attachment 1 are made to the final Animals Bylaw.
2. That the Planning and Development Committee recommends to Council that it makes the final Animals Bylaw, incorporating all resolutions made at this meeting.

3 Background

At its meeting on 14 September 2017 the Planning and Development Committee adopted a Statement of Proposal to revoke and replace Council’s Keeping of Animals, Poultry and Bees Bylaw. This proposal was a result of the statutory review of the Bylaw completed in accordance with s159 of the Local Government Act 2002.

The Committee held a ‘Have Your Say’ event, which was attended by one submitter, and on 1 November heard five submitters who wished to speak to their submission in Chambers.

The activities to give effect to the Special Consultative Procedure requirements as described in the report tabled at the 14 September 2017 meeting have been completed.

The Committee can now deliberate on the submissions received to determine whether any further changes to the proposed Animals Bylaw (the Bylaw) are required and to make a recommendation to Council on the final form and content of the Bylaw.

4 Discussion

There are two distinct matters to be addressed through the deliberations process. The first is the consideration of issues raised by submitters through the consultation process. The second aspect is to consider any officer advice, which is also provided for as part of the process in section 83(3) of the Local Government Act 2002.

In some cases, proposed changes are made due to both submission feedback, as well as officer advice. Where this is the case, this is indicated.

The report is supported through an attachment showing the track changes to the Bylaw that represents the staff recommendations. Attachments 2 and 3 are the version of the Bylaw as consulted on (Attachment 2) and the version of the Bylaw including all proposed changes with the track changes removed for ease of reading (Attachment 3).

4.1 Matters raised in submissions

Matters raised in submissions were restricted to clauses 5, 6 and 9 of the Bylaw, plus two cat related matters that were not included in the proposed Bylaw.

No community feedback was received on any of the other topics of the proposed Bylaw. Therefore, there is no scope to make any changes to these areas, outside of consideration of any further officer advice as provided in section 4.2 of this report. No further deliberations are required on these matters.

A. Obligations of animal owners in general

A submitter raised concerns in relation to clause 6.1(d) of the Bylaw. The submitter's concern was specifically about cats.

Clause 6.1 requires the owner or person in charge of an animal to take measures to avoid potential nuisance and property damage issues as well as risks to public health and safety. The draft clause also included a provision to stop animals roaming off their property.

The staff review of the proposed Bylaw concurred that there may be implications for cats, but that there are also potential other unintended consequences of sub clause 6.1(d).

The requirements of the other sub clauses of 6.1 provide sufficient obligations on an owner, including if their animal causes a nuisance by straying onto another property.

Staff recommendation:

That clause 6.1(d), as highlighted yellow in Attachment 1, is deleted from the final Animals Bylaw.

B. Cats – microchipping and de-sexing

The New Zealand Animal Companion Council has requested that compulsory micro-chipping and de-sexing of cats be included in the proposed Bylaw.

The committee discussed whether to include clauses relating to cats in the proposed Bylaw during the draft development stages of the Bylaw. At that time, it was determined to not include any specific cat related clauses in the Bylaw. This decision was made in light of current LGNZ remits and potential changes to national legislation on cats. Further concerns regarding the cost to residents and ratepayers of such regulations were raised, as well as the cost and difficulties in enforcing such provisions.

Staff recommendation:

That the Planning and Development Committee notes the submission and that no associated changes to the proposed Bylaw are made.

C. Bees

Of the 16 submissions received on the proposed Bylaw, 14 focussed solely on clause 9 - 'Bees'. Submissions ranged from opposition to bees to requests for more permissive and pragmatic rules to support the keeping of bees in the urban environments. Many submitters expressed concern regarding the proposed conditions for bee keeping in the urban environment, stating they were illogical, impractical and would not achieve the desired outcome. Equally, concern was raised that the proposed Bylaw would not give Council enough power to undertake strong enforcement action in those instances where it would be appropriate.

With assistance from the Whangarei Beekeeping Club, the entire clause has been redrafted as well as the definition of a 'hive'. Some of the original draft clause re-iterated national legislative requirements; this does not provide any tools to enforcement officers dealing with complaints. The revised clause provides enforcement officers with more clearly defined powers where bees are of concern to neighbouring residents, including the ability to have hives removed, but also has simplified and expanded the conditions within which bees can be kept in our urban environments.

A large explanatory note has also been included. While this does not form part of the Bylaw, it ensures Council is contributing to the education of beekeepers and supports bees being kept in a manner that reduced potential conflict with neighbours.

Staff recommendation:

That clause 9 and the associated definition of 'hives' in clause 5 as highlighted yellow in Attachment 1 are amended as per the provided track changes.

4.2 Proposed staff amendments

Since the consultation document was adopted, further advice has been sought (legal, by-law administrators and enforcement officers, customer services) and this has been used to recommend further changes to the Bylaw.

D. General matters

The Bylaw was reviewed for technical strength, consistency of terminology and use of 'plain English'. This resulted in several proposed changes, deletion of duplications and additions that do not change the overall content or context of the bylaw, but remove potential ambiguity and/or provide more clarity, including for enforcement purposes. These changes are shown as track changes in Attachment 1.

Staff recommendation:

That all changes showing in track changes in Attachment 1 are made to the final Animals Bylaw.

5 Significance and engagement

5.1 Significance

The decisions and matters of this agenda do not trigger the significance criteria of Council's Significance and Engagement Policy.

5.2 Engagement

Council has consulted with the community on the issues of this agenda in accordance with the statutory requirements of the Local Government Act 2002. The public will be informed via agenda publication on Council's website.

6 Attachments

Attachment 1 – proposed Animals Bylaw showing markup and highlighted changes.

Attachment 2 – proposed Animals Bylaw for consultation.

Attachment 3 – proposed final Animals Bylaw.

Planning and Development Committee Meeting Minutes

Date: Wednesday, 22 November, 2017
Time: 9:00 a.m.
Location: Council Chamber
Forum North, Rust Avenue
Whangarei

In Attendance	Cr Greg Innes (Chairperson) Her Worship the Mayor Sheryl Mai Cr Stu Bell Cr Vince Cocurullo Cr Tricia Cutforth Cr Shelley Deeming Cr Sue Glen Cr Phil Halse Cr Cherry Hermon Cr Greg Martin Cr Sharon Morgan Cr Anna Murphy
Not in Attendance	Cr Crichton Christie

In attendance:

Chief Executive (Rob Forlong), General Manager Planning and Development (Alison Geddes), General Manager Community (Sandra Boardman), Manager Democracy and Assurance (Jason Marris), Manager Strategy (Tony Horton), Strategic Planner (Shireen Munday), Team Leader Democracy (Nicolene Pestana) and Senior Democracy Adviser (C Brindle)

1. Declarations of Interest

2. Apologies

Cr Crichton Christie (absent)
Crs Stu Bell and Sharon Morgan (late arrival)

Moved By Cr Greg Innes

Seconded By Cr Phil Halse

That the apologies be sustained.

Carried

Crs Bell and Morgan joined the meeting at 9.01am following Item 2.

3. Decision Reports

3.1 Deliberations - proposed Animals Bylaw

Item 3.1 was taken in parts.

Moved By Cr Sue Glen

Seconded By Cr Stu Bell

1. That the Planning and Development Committee approves the recommendations as contained in the report and the associated attachments as follows:

A. Obligations of animal owners in general

That clause 6.1(d), as highlighted yellow in Attachment 1, is deleted from the final Animals Bylaw.

B. Cats – microchipping and de-sexing

That the Planning and Development Committee notes the submissions and that no associated changes to the proposed Bylaw are made.

Carried

Moved By Cr Vince Cocurullo

Seconded By Cr Cherry Hermon

C. Bees

That clause 9 and the associated definition of 'hives' in clause 5 as highlighted yellow in Attachment 1 are amended as per the provided track changes.

Carried

Moved By Cr Cherry Hermon

Seconded By Her Worship the Mayor

D. General matters

That all changes showing in track changes in Attachment 1 are made to the final Animals Bylaw.

Carried

Moved By Cr Sharon Morgan

Seconded By Cr Cherry Hermon

2. That the Planning and Development Committee recommends to Council that it makes the final Animals Bylaw, incorporating all resolutions made at this meeting.

Carried

3.2 Deliberations - proposed Parking and Traffic Bylaw

Item 3.2 was taken in parts.

Moved By Cr Sue Glen

Seconded By Cr Shelley Deeming

1. That the Planning and Development Committee approves the recommendations as contained in this report and the associated attachments as follows:

A. Mobility parking

That the Planning and Development Committee notes the submissions and that no associated changes to the proposed Bylaw are made.

Carried

Crs Cocurullo and Murphy requested their votes against be recorded.

Moved By Cr Shelley Deeming

Seconded By Cr Stu Bell

B. Electric vehicle parking

That the Planning and Development Committee notes the submissions and that no associated changes to the proposed Bylaw are made.

Carried

Moved By Cr Shelley Deeming

Seconded By Cr Anna Murphy

C. Technical/wording issues

That the Planning and Development Committee notes the submissions and that the proposed changes provided in section 4.2 F, G, H and I of this report, appropriately address the matters raised by submitters.

Carried

Moved By Cr Stu Bell

Seconded By Her Worship the Mayor

D. Heavy motor vehicle parking

That the Planning and Development Committee notes the submissions and that no associated changes to the proposed Bylaw are made.

Carried

Moved By Cr Phil Halse

Seconded By Cr Shelley Deeming

E. Heavy motor vehicle restrictions

That the Planning and Development Committee notes the submissions and that no associated changes to the proposed Bylaw are made.

Carried

Moved By Cr Shelley Deeming

Seconded By Cr Sue Glen

F. General matters

That all changes showing in track changes in Attachment 1 are made to the final Parking and Traffic Bylaw.

G. Clause 15 – parking places

That clause 15.4, as highlighted yellow in Attachment 1 is included in the final Parking and Traffic Bylaw.

H. Clause 24 – reserved parking

That clause 24, as highlighted yellow in Attachment 1 is deleted from the final Parking and Traffic Bylaw.

I. Clause 25 – parking off a roadway

That clause 25.2(2) as highlighted yellow in Attachment 1 is deleted from the final Parking and Traffic Bylaw.

J. Clause 26 – machinery or equipment on a road

That clause 26 as highlighted yellow in Attachment 1 is amended as per the provided track changes.

Carried

Moved By Cr Tricia Cutforth

Seconded By Cr Greg Martin

2. That the Planning and Development Committee recommends to Council that it makes the final Parking and Traffic Bylaw, incorporating all resolutions made at this meeting.

Carried

Cr Martin was absent from the meeting between 9.45am and 9.47am during discussions on D Heavy motor vehicle parking.

4. Public Excluded Business

There was no public excluded business.

5. Closure of Meeting

The meeting concluded at 9.53am.

Confirmed this 13th day of December 2017

Councillor Greg Innes (Chairperson)

Keeping of Animals, Poultry and Bees Bylaw

Section 155 & 77 Local Government Act 2002 assessment

The current Keeping of Animals, Poultry and Bees Bylaw (KAPBB) is made under the Local Government Act 2002 (LGA).

The statutory review of the KAPBB requires an assessment under s155 of the LGA. This report details this assessment and should be read in conjunction with the 'Legislative process, analysis and consultation requirements' as attached to the Planning and Development Committee report of 14 September 2017, as well as the report itself. This assessment includes an analysis of the available reasonably practicable options to address the perceived problem, together with advantages and disadvantages of each in accordance with s77 LGA.

1. Assessment summary

1. The problems identified in this report relate to the keeping of animals, poultry and bees and specifically associated issues in more populated in urban areas. In brief, there is a need to update the bylaw to reflect changes in community behaviour around bees and provide clear rules on this, as well as to provide clarity on the powers of Council, either missing or unclear in the current KAPBB.
2. A bylaw is considered to be the most appropriate way of addressing the perceived problems.
3. The current bylaw is not the most appropriate form of bylaw.
4. The most reasonable practicable option is to revoke the existing bylaw and replace it with a new one.
5. The proposed bylaw is the most appropriate form of bylaw.
6. The proposed bylaw does not give rise to any NZ Bill of Rights implications.

2. Perceived problems

7. The keeping of animals, poultry and bees can create odour, noise and other nuisances. They can create issues particularly in residential areas but there are also broader implications of animal ownership that should be addressed in the bylaw.
8. The keeping of bees has become a more widespread past-time since the KAPBB was last reviewed, and the current lack of restrictions on beehives in urban areas is cause of concern for some members of the community.
9. Powers are either missing, duplicated or not clearly articulated in the current bylaw that Council requires for enforcement purposes.

3. Is a bylaw the most appropriate way of addressing the problems?

The first step in a review process is always to assess what the perceived problem is and what mechanisms are available to Council to address the perceived problem. Table 1 outlines the assessment for each option available.

Table 1

Option	Outcome	Comments
Option A – no action taken to address perceived problems	Council would revoke the existing bylaw. Council would have no mechanisms available to control the ownership of animals.	This option would not provide Council with any abilities to address the perceived problems and is therefore not recommended.
Option B – provide a non-regulatory policy on animals to address the perceived problem	Council would revoke the existing bylaw and develop a policy approach to the perceived problem. This would rely on voluntary compliance as it would not have any associated enforcement powers.	The fundamental difficulty with any voluntary compliance regime in this area is that individuals do not have an adequate incentive to comply. This option is not recommended.
Option C – provide a bylaw on the management of animals in the District.	Council has a bylaw that provides a policy approach to the relevant matters and this is supported through available enforcement activities.	This is the recommended option. Council has specific bylaw-making powers that allows it to make bylaws to address the perceived problems as outlined in this report. This options allows for enforcement activities for the benefit of the community.

Option C is the preferred approach.

4. Is the existing bylaw the most appropriate form of bylaw?

The current bylaw is not the most appropriate form of bylaw. The bylaw -

- appears overly prescriptive in some areas
- misses or is unclear on important powers in other areas
- duplicates powers Council already possesses under other legislation
- Does not reflect modern drafting practice and does not use 'plain english' language.

For the reasons above, the existing bylaw is not the most appropriate form of bylaw.

5. Reasonably practicable options

The review requirements of section 160(2) of the LGA have now been addressed within this report. Council now has four options to consider in accordance with section 160(3) of the LGA as outlined in Table 2 on the following page. These options also provide a link to the decision-making requirements of section 77 of the LGA, including the identification of reasonably practicable options.

Table 2

Option	Description	Advantages	Disadvantages
Option A - Amend the existing bylaw	Adopt a statement of proposal for public consultation including the proposed amended bylaw.	The bylaw would be subject to a 10-year review period.	See discussion below.
Option B - Keep the bylaw as it is	Adopt a statement of proposal for public consultation with the current bylaw.	No changes to current situation, no new rules for community.	Inconsistent with the analysis in this report regarding the appropriate form of bylaw.
Option C - Revoke the bylaw	Adopt a statement of proposal for public consultation stating Council's intention to revoke the bylaw.	Reduces Council's enforcement activity requirements.	As per Table 1 of this report, not considered a reasonably practicable option in accordance with s77(1)(a) of the LGA.
Option D - Revoke and replace the bylaw	Adopt a statement of proposal for public consultation including a new bylaw.	As outlined in section 4 of this report.	See discussion below.

The legislative process and analysis, as attached to the Planning and Development Committee report of 14 September 2017, highlights a lack of legal clarity on the appropriate process. The review of the KAPBB did not occur prior to the ten-year required period, but is being undertaken within the two year 'extension' period as provided for in s160A of the LGA.

Generally, the required changes to the KAPBB would be of a scale to warrant amending the bylaw rather than revoking and replacing it. However, due to the circumstances, it is considered prudent to revoke and replace the bylaw instead. The only practicable implications of this is that the bylaw will be a new bylaw and therefore subject to a five year, rather than a ten year, review period.

6. Is the proposed bylaw the most appropriate form of bylaw

The proposed bylaw addresses the perceived problems and overcomes the issues with the current bylaw. It -

- provides clearly articulated restrictions on the keeping of bees in urban areas
- expands the general duty of animal owners to the entire District
- removes duplication of powers Council already possesses under other legislation
- reflects legal developments and modern drafting practice
- uses plain English.

The Statement of Proposal for the new bylaw provides a more detailed overview of the proposed content changes.

7. Does the proposed bylaw give rise to any implications under the New Zealand Bill of Rights Act 1990

It is considered that no rights or freedoms are being unreasonably limited by the proposed bylaw.

7.5 Whangarei Arts Museum Trust – Review of Exemption

Meeting: Council
Date of meeting: 14 December 2017
Reporting officer: Jason Marris (Manager Democracy and Assurance)

1 Purpose

To review the current Council Controlled Organisation (CCO) exemption for the Whangarei Art Museum Trust (WAMT).

2 Recommendations

That Council:

- (a) Revokes the exemption from reporting requirements provided to the Whangarei Art Museum Trust under Section 7 of the Local Government Act (2002).
- (b) Revokes the exemption provided to the Whangarei Art Museum Trust with effect from 1 January 2018.
- (c) Approves the following criteria be included in a Letter of Expectation to the Whangarei Art Museum Trust to inform the Draft Statement of Intent for the 2018/19 financial year.

Governance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Performance review of trustees ▪ Health and safety commitments ▪ Being a good employer e.g. staff engagement, training ▪ Managing risk ▪ Ensuring legislative compliance e.g. Official information ▪ Long term planning and vision ▪ Funding requirements and financial management
Operation of Whangarei Art Museum	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Annual performance measures <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Community engagement and education - Marketing and communications - Exhibition planning - Collection management - Operational management and facilities
Hundertwasser Wairau Māori Arts Centre	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Project management against milestones ▪ Risk management (Project specific) ▪ Communication, publication, relationship with the community ▪ Health and Safety (Project specific)

- (d) Delegates to the Mayor and Chief Executive the authority to approve the Letter of Expectation based on the adopted criteria, to be sent to the Whangarei Art Museum Trust in December 2017.

3 Background

The Local Government Act (LGA) determines how Local Authorities interact with Council Controlled Organisations (CCOs). Within the framework provided by the Act, Councils have discretion on how this interaction occurs.

A Council must determine if the CCO is suitable to be exempt from the reporting requirements in the LGA. The ability to exempt a CCO was included in the legislation to address concerns about compliance costs for small, non-profit entities. Council can revoke an exemption at any time and must review the exemption every three years.

If the CCO is not exempted, the reporting requirements in the LGA need to be undertaken. These reporting requirements are designed to ensure accountability and transparency for the Council and public, and are provided in Table One below.

Table One: CCO Reporting Requirements

Requirement	By when
CCO must produce a Draft Statement of Intent (SOI)	Before 1 March each year
Council must agree to the draft SOI or provide commentary to the CCO on modifications	The CCO must consider any commentary from Council within two months, by 1 May
CCO must provide Final SOI to Council	Delivered to Council prior to 30 June
CCO must produce a Half Yearly Report to Council	Within two months after the end of the first half of each financial year (by 28 February)
CCO must produce an Annual Report	Within three months of the end of the financial year (by 31 October)

Table One shows the minimum reporting requirements. A further step that Council can include at the start of the process is to send a Letter of Expectation to the CCO three to four months prior to the draft SOI being delivered to Council. This would set out very high level expectations from Council to the CCO, which can then inform the way the CCO formulates the draft SOI. Including this step in the process is common and is considered best practise.

4 Whangarei Art Museum Trust Exemption

WAMT is incorporated as a board under the Charitable Trusts Act and is a CCO as Council appoints representatives to the Trust.

Council has exempted WAMT since 2009, with the next three-year period for reviewing this due in May 2018. The exemption has continued to be granted as the cost of fulfilling the reporting requirements was not warranted. In 2015, it was signalled in a council report that if WAMT was to take a direct role in the operation of one of the potential options for the redeveloped Old Harbour Board Building, this exemption would be revisited when it was appropriate to do so.

Given the recent milestones that have been met regarding the Hundertwasser Wairau Māori Arts Centre (HWMAC) project, and the direct involvement of WAMT, it is appropriate for Council to consider revoking the exemption status now. High level reasons for this are:

- To manage overall risk

- To overview direction
- To ensure oversight of progress with projects
- To allow public transparency and accountability into operations, and results
- To ensure financial and non-financial performance.

Options

There are two options to be considered;

1. Status Quo

Council could agree that WAMT remains an exempted CCO. Given the recent milestones met for the HWMAC project, the involvement of WAMT, and the scrutiny that this has brought, this approach would need to be justified.

2. Revoke the exemption

Council could formally revoke the exemption for the reasons highlighted above. This is the recommended option.

5 Revocation of the Exemption (Timing)

If Council decides to revoke the exemption for WAMT, the effective date of the decision is important.

Options

Again, there are two options to be considered here;

1. Revoke the exemption effective prior to end of December 2017

If the exemption is revoked prior to 31 December this year, WAMT would be legislatively required to produce a draft SOI for Council review and agreement for the remainder of this 2017/18 financial year (January to June 2018). At the same time, WAMT would also be required to continue the normal process outlined in Table One to ensure a robust reporting regime for the 2018/19 financial year.

The LGA is silent on timing for a revocation process, however, running both processes at the same time could look like Table Two, below.

Table Two: Reporting requirements if exemption revoked in December 2017

1 January 2018 – 30 June 2018	1 July 2018 – 30 June 2019
Letter of expectation sent – December 2017	Letter of expectation sent – December 2017
Draft SOI delivered – February 2018	Draft SOI delivered by 1 March 2018
CCO consider Council commentary by mid-March 2018	CCO must consider Council commentary by 1 May 2018
Final SOI delivered – March 2018	Final SOI delivered by 30 June 2018
Annual report delivered October 2018	

Running both of these processes at the same time would be particularly onerous on WAMT, would run over the Christmas recess period and would possibly be confusing. Further, current WAMT reporting via the Community Development Committee can be continued during this period (January to June 2018). For these reasons, this is not the recommended option.

2. Revoke the exemption effective in January 2018

Council could revoke the exemption, effective in January 2018. This would mean the normal reporting requirements would apply, as described in Table One. In turn, this would allow appropriate planning by WAMT and council staff, would be less confusing and less onerous. As described earlier, WAMT will still continue to report to the Community Development Committee, so that the Council and public are appropriately informed.

This is the recommended option.

6 Letter of Expectation

If Council wishes to revoke the exemption, for either of the options highlighted in section five of this report, it will be important to identify Council's expectations of WAMT through a Letter of Expectation. This letter would set out high level expectations for WAMT to address how these areas would be addressed within their draft SOI, due to Council in March.

A council workshop held on 16 November identified high level expectations that could be included in WAMT's draft SOI. Feedback received has been incorporated and the categories highlighted in Table Three, below.

Table Three: High level expectations for the Letter of Expectation

Governance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Performance review of trustees ▪ Health and safety commitments ▪ Being a good employer e.g. staff engagement, training ▪ Managing risk ▪ Ensuring legislative compliance e.g. Official information ▪ Long term planning and vision ▪ Funding requirements and financial management
Operation of Whangarei Art Museum	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Annual performance measures <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Community engagement and education - Marketing and communications - Exhibition planning - Collection management - Operational management and facilities
Hundertwasser Wairau Māori Arts Centre	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Project management against milestones ▪ Risk management (Project specific) ▪ Communication, publication, relationship with the community ▪ Health and Safety (Project specific) ▪ Financial management
Administration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Inclusion of a guide to preparing an SOI ▪ Provision of an SOI template for completion ▪ Summary of the reporting timetable, committee dates and agenda timeframes

Following council decision-making, staff would draft the Letter of Expectation to be sent to WAMT in December. The delegation is sought in the recommendations for the Mayor and Chief Executive to approve the letter to be sent.

7 Significance and engagement

The decisions or matters of this Agenda do not trigger the significance criteria outlined in Council's Significance and Engagement Policy, and the public will be informed via agenda publication on the website.

RESOLUTION TO EXCLUDE THE PUBLIC

That the public be excluded from the following parts of proceedings of this meeting.

The general subject of each matter to be considered while the public is excluded, the reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter, and the specific grounds under Section 48(1) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 for the passing of this resolution are as follows:

1.	The making available of information would be likely to unreasonably prejudice the commercial position of persons who are the subject of the
2.	To enable the council (the committee) to carry on without prejudice or disadvantage commercial negotiations. {(Section 7(2)(i))}.
3.	To protect the privacy of natural persons. {Section 7(2)(a)}.
4.	Publicity prior to successful prosecution of the individuals named would be contrary to the laws of natural justice and may constitute contempt of court.
5.	To protect information which is the subject to an obligation of confidence, the publication of such information would be likely to prejudice the supply of information from the same source and it is in the public interest that such information should continue to be supplied.
6.	In order to maintain legal professional privilege. {Section 2(g)}.
7.	To enable the council to carry on without prejudice or disadvantage, negotiations {Section 7(2)(i)}.

Resolution to allow members of the public to remain

If the council/committee wishes members of the public to remain during discussion of confidential items the following additional recommendation will need to be passed:

Move/Second

permitted to remain at this meeting, after the public has been excluded, because of his/her/their knowledge of _____

This knowledge, which will be of assistance in relation to the matter to be discussed, is relevant to that matter because _____

Note:

Every resolution to exclude the public shall be put at a time when the meeting is open to the public.